multi Version: multiFiltratePRO Instructions for Use

Software version: 5.0 Edition: 10A-2019 Date of issue: January 2019 Part no.: F40012013

(€ 0123





Table of contents

1 Index

2 Important information

| 2.1 | How to use the Instructions for Use | |
|---|---|---|
| 2.2 | Significance of warnings | |
| 2.3 | Significance of notes | |
| 2.4 | Significance of tips | |
| 2.5 | Brief description | |
| 2.6 2.6.1 2.6.2 2.6.3 2.6.4 2.6.5 2.6.6 2.6.7 | Intended use Intended purpose Specification of use Treatment therapies and fields of application Anticoagulation of the extracorporeal blood circuit Side effects Contraindications Interaction with other systems | 2-3 2-3 2-4 2-4 2-4 2-4 2-5 2-6 2-7 |
| 2.6.8 | Therapy restrictions | |
| 2. 7 | Please note the following when working on the device | |
| 2.8 | Expected service life | |
| 2.9 | Duties of the responsible organisation | |
| 2.10 | Operator responsibility | |
| 2.11 | Disclaimer of liability | |
| 2.12 2.12.1 2.12.2 | Warnings Warning about electrical safety Warnings relating to consumables and accessories | |
| 2.13 | SVHC (REACH) | |
| 2.14 | Addresses | |

3 Design

| 3.1 | Views of the device | |
|-------|-------------------------|-----|
| 3.1.1 | Front view | |
| 3.1.2 | Rear view | |
| | 3.1.2.1 Connector strip | |
| 3.1.3 | Left side view | |
| 3.1.4 | Right side view | 3-5 |
| 3.2 | Controls and indicators | 3-6 |

| 3.2.1 | Monitor front | |
|-------|---|--|
| 3.2.2 | Monitor rear | |
| 3.2.3 | Positioning the monitor | |
| 3.2.4 | Using the card slot | |
| 3.2.5 | Positioning the filter holder | |
| 3.2.6 | Heparin pump | |
| 3.2.7 | Heater | |
| 3.2.8 | Extracorporeal Blood Circuit Module | |
| 3.3 | User interface | |
| 3.4 | General operating concept | |
| 3.4.1 | Colour coding on the device and single-use articles | |
| 3.4.2 | Screen colours | |
| 3.4.3 | Context-specific information | |
| 3.5 | Basic input procedures | |
| 3.5.1 | Changing settings with the rocker switch buttons | |
| 3.5.2 | Changing settings with the number buttons | |
| 3.5.3 | Entering data with the keyboard | |
| 3.5.4 | On/Off button | |
| 3.5.5 | Viewing the ratio of the UF rate to the blood flow rate | |
| 3.5.6 | Viewing the pressure values | |
| 3.5.7 | Setting the pressure alarm limit values | |

4 Operation

| 4.1 | Applicatio | n principles | 4-1 |
|--------|---------------|---|------|
| 4.2 | CRRT treat | tments | 4-7 |
| 4.2.1 | Switching o | on the device and starting the function test | |
| 4.2.2 | Selecting th | ne treatment option | |
| 4.2.3 | Continuing | the previous treatment | |
| 4.2.4 | Start require | ements | |
| 4.2.5 | Mounting th | ne cassette | 4-9 |
| | 4.2.5.1 | Mounting the return system | 4-10 |
| | 4.2.5.2 | Mounting the access system | |
| | 4.2.5.3 | Mounting the filtrate system | 4-12 |
| | 4.2.5.4 | Loading the solution bags | 4-12 |
| | 4.2.5.5 | Mounting the dialysate/substituate systems | 4-13 |
| | 4.2.5.6 | Inserting the heparin syringe | 4-14 |
| | 4.2.5.7 | Cassette mounting completed | 4-15 |
| 4.2.6 | Filling and I | rinsing the cassette | 4-16 |
| | 4.2.6.1 | Filling the tubing system | 4-16 |
| | 4.2.6.2 | Entering the Patient ID and Case ID | 4-16 |
| | 4.2.6.3 | Entering treatment parameters | 4-17 |
| | 4.2.6.4 | UF Rinse | 4-18 |
| 4.2.7 | Circulation. | | |
| 4.2.8 | Connecting | the patient | 4-20 |
| 4.2.9 | Treatment . | | 4-21 |
| | 4.2.9.1 | Treatment screen | 4-21 |
| | 4.2.9.2 | Menus | 4-22 |
| | 4.2.9.3 | Histories | 4-22 |
| | 4.2.9.4 | System Parameters | 4-23 |
| 4.2.10 | Changing th | he treatment mode | |
| | 4.2.10.1 | Changing the treatment mode from CVVHDF to CVVH | 4-24 |
| | | | |

| 4211 | 4.2.10.2 End of trea | Changing the treatment mode from CVVHDF to CVVHD | |
|--------------|-------------------------|--|------|
| 7.2.11 | 4 2 11 1 | Preparing the end of treatment | 4-26 |
| | 42112 | End of treatment with blood reinfusion | 4-27 |
| | 4.2.11.3 | Starting blood reinfusion | 4-27 |
| | 4.2.11.4 | NaCl solution detected | |
| | 4.2.11.5 | Disconnecting the patient | |
| | 4.2.11.6 | Dismantling the tubing system | 4-29 |
| 12 | | a troatmonts | 1 30 |
| 4.3 / 3 1 | Switching of | on the device and starting the function test | |
| 4.3.1 | Selecting th | be treatment ontion | |
| 433 | Continuing | the previous treatment | |
| 434 | Start requir | rements | 4-32 |
| 435 | Mounting th | he cassette | 4-32 |
| | 4.3.5.1 | Mounting the return system | 4-33 |
| | 4.3.5.2 | Mounting the access system | |
| | 4.3.5.3 | Mounting the filtrate system | |
| | 4.3.5.4 | Loading the solution bags | |
| | 4.3.5.5 | Mounting the dialysate/substituate systems | 4-37 |
| | 4.3.5.6 | Mounting the Ci-Ca system | |
| | 4.3.5.7 | Inserting the heparin syringe | |
| | 4.3.5.8 | Cassette mounting completed | 4-41 |
| 4.3.6 | Filling and | rinsing the cassette | 4-41 |
| | 4.3.6.1 | Filling the Ci-Ca system | 4-41 |
| | 4.3.6.2 | Checking the Ci-Ca lines | 4-42 |
| | 4.3.6.3 | Filling the tubing system | 4-42 |
| | 4.3.6.4 | Entering the Patient ID and Case ID | |
| | 4.3.6.5 | Entering treatment parameters | |
| | 4.3.6.6 | UF Rinse | |
| 4.3.7 | Circulation. | | |
| 4.3.8 | Connecting | j the patient | |
| 4.3.9 | | Traatmant screen | |
| | 4.3.9.1 | Menus | |
| | 4393 | Histories | |
| | 4394 | System Parameters | 4-51 |
| 4 3 10 | End of trea | tment | 4-52 |
| | 4.3.10.1 | Preparing the end of treatment | |
| | 4.3.10.2 | End of treatment with blood reinfusion | |
| | 4.3.10.3 | Starting blood reinfusion | 4-53 |
| | 4.3.10.4 | NaCl solution detected | 4-54 |
| | 4.3.10.5 | Disconnecting the patient | |
| | 4.3.10.6 | Dismantling the tubing system | 4-55 |
| 11 | TDE treatn | nonte | 4-56 |
| 4 4 1 | Switching | on the device and starting the function test | |
| 442 | Selecting th | he treatment ontion | 4-57 |
| 443 | Start requir | rements | 4-57 |
| 4.4.4 | Mounting th | he cassette | 4-58 |
| | 4.4.4.1 | Mounting the return system | |
| | 4.4.4.2 | Mounting the access system | |
| | 4.4.4.3 | Mounting the filtrate system | |
| | 4.4.4.4 | Loading the solution bags | 4-61 |
| | 4.4.4.5 | Mounting the plasma system | 4-61 |
| | 4.4.4.6 | Inserting the heparin syringe | |
| | 4.4.4.7 | Cassette mounting completed | 4-63 |

| 4.4.5 | Filling and rinsing the cassette | |
|---------------------|--|-------|
| | 4.4.5.1 Filling the tubing system | |
| | 4.4.5.2 Entering the Patient ID and Case ID | |
| | 4.4.5.3 Entering treatment parameters | |
| | 4.4.5.4 UF Rinse | |
| 4.4.6 | Circulation | |
| 4.4.7 | Filling the plasma system | |
| 4.4.8 | Patient connection | |
| 4.4.9 | Preparing plasmafiltration | |
| 4.4.10 | Treatment | |
| | 4.4.10.1 Treatment screen | |
| | 4.4.10.2 Menus | |
| | 4.4.10.3 Histories | |
| | 4.4.10.4 System Parameters | |
| | 4.4.10.5 Performing a plasma bag change | |
| | 4.4.10.6 Performing filtrate bag change (TPE) | |
| 4.4.11 | End of treatment | |
| | 4.4.11.1 Preparing the end of treatment | |
| | 4.4.11.2 Exchanging residual plasma | |
| | 4.4.11.3 Selecting blood reinfusion | |
| | 4.4.11.4 End of treatment with blood reinfusion | |
| | 4.4.11.5 Disconnecting the patient | |
| | 4.4.11.6 Dismantling the tubing system | |
| 4.5 | Treatment displays | 4-82 |
| 4.5.1 | Pressure / alarm history | 4-82 |
| 4.5.2 | Next operator action | 4-82 |
| | | |
| 4.6 | Menus | |
| 4.6.1 | Setting the level in the bubble catcher | |
| 4.6.2 | Cancel preparation | |
| 4.6.3 | I reatment pause | |
| | 4.6.3.1 I reatment pause with blood reinfusion (CRRT only) | |
| | 4.6.3.2 I reatment pause without blood reinfusion | |
| 4.6.4 | Switching balancing off/on | |
| 4.6.5 | Change syringe | |
| 4.6.6 | Care mode is active | |
| 4.6.7 | Switching between predilution and postdilution | |
| 4.6.8 | Bag change (substituate/dialysate/filtrate) | |
| 4.6.9 | | |
| 4.0.10 | Ca bag change | |
| 4.0.11 | Cultate bag change | |
| 4.0.12 | Switching on Ci-Ca anticoagulation | |
| 4.0.13 | Switching on OFCa anticoagulation | |
| 4.0.14 | Switching blood look monitoring off (TDE only) | |
| 4.0.15 | | |
| 4.7 | Histories | |
| 4.7.1 | Balance data | 4-105 |
| | 4.7.1.1 CRRT | |
| | 4.7.1.2 TPE | |
| 4.7.2 | Balance history | 4-108 |
| 4.7.3 | Evente | |
| | Events | |
| 4.8 | Events | |
| 4.8 4 8 1 | Events | |
| 4.8 4.8.1 | Events | |
| 4.8 4.8.1 | Events System Parameters Access without UserCard 4.8.1.1 Pressure selection 4.8.1.2 Device information | |

| 4.8.2 | 4.8.1.3 Access with | Basic settings UserCard | 4-112 4-113 |
|-------|------------------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| | 4.8.2.1 | Applications | 4-113 |
| 4.8.3 | User setup. | | 4-115 |
| | 4.8.3.1 | Heparin | 4-115 |
| | 4.8.3.2 | User interface | 4-116 |
| | 4.8.3.3 | CRRT | 4-117 |
| | 4.8.3.4 | TPE | 4-121 |
| 4.9 | Network | | 4-124 |
| 4.9.1 | Observe bef | ore use | 4-124 |
| 4.9.2 | PDMS conn | ection | 4-125 |

5 Alarm processing

| 5.1 | Repeated confirmation of a message | 5-1 |
|---|--|------------------------------|
| 5.2 5.2.1 5.2.2 | Alarm schemes Alarm scheme one Alarm scheme two | 5-2 5-2 5-3 |
| 5.3 | High-priority alarm conditions | |
| 5.4 | Alarm system | |
| 5.5 | Response of the alarm system | |
| 5.6 | Messages | |
| 5.7 | Messages during the functional test | |
| 5.8 | UF/BF message | |
| 5.9 | Ratio of calcium flow to filtrate flow | 5-10 |
| 5.10 | Ratio of citrate flow to blood flow | |
| 5.11 | Ratio of plasma rate to blood flow | |
| 5.12 5.12.1 5.12.2 | Pressure deviation messages Resetting the alarm limit windows Reducing the access pressure | 5-12 5-12 5-13 |
| 5.13 5.13.1 5.13.2 5.13.3 | Message "Air detected downstream of the bubble catcher" Before beginning deaeration procedures Air detected Deaeration procedures | 5-14 5-14 5-15 5-15 |
| 5.14 5.14.1 5.14.2 | Message "Microbubbles detected downstream of bubble catcher" Before removing the microbubbles Microbubbles detected | 5-18 5-18 5-19 |
| 5.15 | Blood leak | 5-20 |
| 5.16 5.16.1 5.16.2 | Power failure (mains power failure) During preparation During treatment | 5-21 5-21 5-21 |
| 5.17 | Display failure | 5-22 |
| 5.18 | Manual blood reinfusion | 5-22 |
| 5.19 | Manually opening the pressure measurement units | 5-23 |

6 Cleaning / disinfection

| 6.1 6.1.1 | Surface cleaning / surface disinfection | 6-1 6-2 |
|---------------------|---|------------|
| 6.1.2 | Detachable device components | 6-2 |
| 6.2 | Disinfectants and cleaning agents | 6-3 |

7 Functional description

| 7.1 | Device functions | 7-1 |
|-------|--|------|
| 7.2 | Description of therapies | 7-1 |
| 7.2.1 | Continuous renal replacement therapy | 7-1 |
| | 7.2.1.1 CVVH | 7-2 |
| | 7.2.1.2 CVVHD | |
| | 7.2.1.3 CVVHDF | 7-8 |
| 7.2.2 | Therapeutic plasma exchange | 7-11 |
| 7.3 | Anticoagulation | |
| 7.3.1 | Systemic anticoagulation | |
| 7.3.2 | Regional citrate anticoagulation | |
| | 7.3.2.1 Basic information on citrate anticoagulation | |
| | 7.3.2.2 Adequate anticoagulation in the extracorporeal blood circuit | |
| | 7.3.2.3 Control of systemic ionised calcium | |
| | 7.3.2.4 Control of the systemic acid-base balance | |
| | 7.3.2.5 Citrate accumulation | |
| 7.3.3 | Solutions for citrate anticoagulation | |

8 Consumables, accessories, additional equipment

| 8.1 | Consumables | 8-2 |
|-------|---|-----|
| 8.1.1 | multiFiltratePRO Treatment kits | 8-2 |
| 8.1.2 | Haemofilters/plasma filters | 8-2 |
| 8.1.3 | Isotonic NaCl solutions | 8-3 |
| 8.1.4 | Dialysate and haemofiltration solutions | 8-3 |
| 8.1.5 | Citrate solution | 8-3 |
| 8.1.6 | Disposable syringes | 8-4 |
| 8.1.7 | Other single-use items | 8-4 |
| 8.2 | Additional equipment | 8-5 |

9 Installation

| 9.1 | Connection requirements | 9-1 |
|-------|--|-----|
| 9.1.1 | Environment | 9-1 |
| 9.1.2 | Power supply network | 9-1 |
| 9.1.3 | Electrical installation | 9-2 |
| 9.2 | Installation / initial start-up requirements | 9-2 |
| 9.3 | Important information on initial start-up | 9-3 |

10 Transport / storage

| 10.1 | Relocation | 10-1 |
|------|--|------|
| 10.2 | Transport | 10-3 |
| 10.3 | Storage | 10-3 |
| 10.4 | Environmental compatibility / disposal | 10-4 |

11 Technical Safety Checks / maintenance procedures

| 11.1 | Important information on the | Technical Safety Checks | / maintenance procedures 11- | -1 |
|------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|----|
|------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|----|

12 Specifications

| 12.1 | Dimensions and weight | 12-1 |
|--------|---|-------|
| 12.2 | Electrical safety | 12-1 |
| 12.3 | Electric power supply | 12-1 |
| 12.4 | Identification label (device marking) | 12-2 |
| 12.4.1 | Identification label of the device | |
| 12.4.2 | Power label | |
| 12.5 | Information on electromagnetic compatibility (IEC 60601-1-2:2014) | 12-3 |
| 12.5.1 | Minimum distances between radiation source and medical electrical equipment | |
| 12.5.2 | Guidance and manufacturer's declaration on EMC | 12-4 |
| 12.6 | Operating conditions | 12-6 |
| 12.7 | Storage conditions | 12-6 |
| 12.8 | External connection options | 12-6 |
| 12.9 | Operating programs | 12-9 |
| 12.10 | Balancing/dialysate circuit and safety systems | 12-9 |
| 12.11 | Extracorporeal blood circuit and safety systems | 12-12 |
| 12.12 | Materials used | 12-17 |
| | | |

13 Definitions

| 13.1 | Terms | 13-1 |
|------|------------------------|------|
| 13.2 | Abbreviations | 13-3 |
| 13.3 | Symbols | 13-4 |
| 13.4 | Symbols on consumables | 13-7 |
| 13.5 | Certificates | 13-7 |

| 14 Options | | ns |
|------------|------|-------------------------|
| | 14.1 | Chapter without content |

15 Appendix

| 15.1 Instructions on the use of "free software" | 15.1 | Instructions on the use of "free software" | '1 | 5- | 1 |
|---|------|--|----|----|---|
|---|------|--|----|----|---|

1 Index

A

Abbreviations 13-3 Access pressure 12-12, 13-1 Access pressure measurement unit (red) 3-11 Access system 13-1 Accessories 8-5 Accessories case 3-2 Additional equipment 8-5 Air bubble detector 3-11, 12-14 Air detected 5-15 Alarm function check 13-1 Alarm limit 13-1 Alarm priorities 5-6 Alarm processing 5-1 Alarm scheme one 5-2 Alarm scheme two 5-3 Alarm schemes 5-2 Alarm system 5-5 Ambient temperature sensor 12-11 Anticoagulation 7-14 Appendix 15-1 Application principles 4-1 Audible tone 12-15 Audio paused 3-6

В

Bag change 4-96 Bag change (substituate/dialysate/filtrate) 4-96 Balance data 4-105 Balance history 4-108 Balancing 4-106, 7-1 Balancing error 4-106, 12-11 Basic input procedures 3-15 Battery 10-3, 13-1 Blood circuit module 3-11 Blood leak 5-20 Blood leak detector 13-1 Blood leak detector (yellow) 3-11 Blood leak/haemolysis detector 12-9 Blood pump 3-11, 12-13, 13-1 Blood reinfusion 5-22 Bubble catcher 4-83

С

Ca bag change 4-98 Calcium dose 7-22 Calcium drip counter (white) 3-11 Calcium fill level detector (white) 3-11 Calcium flow 13-1 Calcium pump (white) 3-11, 12-15, 13-1 Cancel preparation 4-11, 4-34, 4-60 Card for use by service engineers 13-3 Card slot 3-5, 3-7, 13-1 Care mode is active 4-94 Cassette detector 3-11, 12-15 Certificates 13-7 Change syringe 4-94 Changing settings with the number buttons 3-16 Changing settings with the rocker switch buttons 3-15 Ci-Ca drip counter 12-15 Ci-Ca fill level detector 12-15 Circulation 12-9 Citrate accumulation 7-25 Citrate bag change 4-99 Citrate dose 7-20, 7-21, 13-1 Citrate drip counter (green) 3-11 Citrate fill level detector (green) 3-11 Citrate flow 13-1 Citrate pump (green) 3-11, 12-15, 13-1 Citrate solution 8-3 Cleaning 6-1

Cleaning agents 6-3

Cleaning the display 6-2 Connection options 12-6 Connector strip 3-2, 3-3 Consumables 8-2 Context-specific information 3-14 Continuous renal replacement therapy 7-1 Contraindications 2-6 Controls and indicators 3-6 Convection 13-1 CRRT 7-1 CRRT 7-1 CRRT Ci-Ca treatments 4-30 CRRT types 7-2 CVVHD 7-6

D

Deaeration procedures 5-15 Definitions 13-1 Device functions 7-1 Dialysate 8-3, 13-2 Dialysate pump 3-11 Diffusion 13-2 Dimensions 12-1 Disclaimer of liability 2-9 Disinfectants 6-3 Disinfection 6-1 Display failure 5-22 Disposable syringes 8-4 Duties of the responsible organisation 2-8

Ε

Electrical installation 9-2 Electrical safety 12-1 Electromagnetic emissions 12-4 Electromagnetic immunity 12-5 Electrostatic discharge 2-7 End of treatment / Blood reinfusion 12-9 Environmental compatibility / disposal 10-4 Equipotential bonding 3-3 Events 4-108 Exchange volume 13-2 Expected service life 2-8 External connection options 12-6 Extracorporeal blood circuit 7-1, 13-2 Extracorporeal blood circuit and safety systems 12-12 Extracorporeal Blood Circuit Module (CRRT) 3-11 Extracorporeal blood circuit, anticoagulation 2-4

F

Fill level detector 3-11, 12-14 Filling the tubing system 12-9 Filter holder 3-5 Filter life 4-106, 13-2 Filtrate bag 13-2 Filtrate pressure measurement unit (yellow) 3-11 Filtrate pump 3-11 Filtrate pump 3-11 Filtration 13-2 Flow rates 12-10 Free software 15-1 Front view of device 3-1 Functional description 7-1 Functional test 7-1, 12-9

G

General operating concept 3-13

Η

Haemodialysis 13-2 Haemofilters/plasma filters 8-2 Haemofiltration 13-2 Haemofiltration solutions 8-3 Heater (green) 3-4 Heater (white) 3-4 Heater microswitch 12-11 Heparin pump 3-5, 3-9, 12-15, 13-2 High-priority alarm conditions 5-4 Histories 4-105 Hook-up test 13-2 How to use the Instructions for Use 2-1

I

Identification 3-2 Identification label 3-2 Important information 2-1 Important information on initial start-up 9-3 Important information on the Technical Safety Checks / maintenance procedures 11-1 Initial start-up 9-3 Initial start-up 9-3 Initial start-up requirements 9-2 Insertion switch 13-3 Installation 9-1 IV pole (left and right) 3-1

K

Keyboard 3-17 Kit service life 13-3

L

LAN (local area network) network connection 3-3 Left side view of the device 3-4 Limit monitoring 3-19 Limit values 3-19 Line occlusion clamp (blue) 3-11 Line occlusion clamp (red) 3-11 Loudspeaker 3-7

Μ

Mains power failure (power failure) 5-21 Maintenance procedures 11-1 Manual blood reinfusion 5-22 Manually opening the pressure measurement units 5-23 Materials 12-17 Menu bar 3-12 Menu panel 3-13 Menus 4-83 Messages 5-8 Microbubbles 5-18 Microbubbles detected downstream of bubble catcher 5-18 Monitor 3-1, 3-6 Monitor arm 3-7 Monitor rear 3-7 Monitor/buttons 3-6

Ν

NaCl solutions 8-3 Net UF volume 13-3 Next operator action 4-82 Note symbol, significance 2-2 Nurse call port 3-3

0

On/Off button 3-18 Operating conditions 12-6 Operating programs 12-9 Operating status indicator (traffic light) 3-6 Operator responsibility 2-8 Optical detector 3-11, 12-14

Ρ

Patient connection 12-9 Performing filtrate bag change (TPE) 4-75 Positioning the filter holder 3-8 Positioning the monitor 3-7 Post CVVH 7-2 Postdilution 4-14, 13-3 Post-filter calcium concentration 13-3 Power failure (mains power failure) 5-21 Power label 3-2 Power supply connection 3-3 Power switch 3-3 Pre CVVH 7-3 Predilution 4-13, 13-3 Predilution substituate pump 3-11 Pre-filter pressure 12-12 Pre-filter pressure measurement unit (red) 3-11 Preparation 12-9

Preparation time 13-3 Pressure / alarm history 4-82 Pressure alarm windows 3-21 Pressure displays 3-12 Pressure measurement units 3-3 Pressure values 3-19 Progress bar 3-12

R

Ratio of calcium flow to filtrate flow 5-10 Ratio of citrate flow to blood flow 5-11 Rear view of device 3-2 Recessed grip 3-7 Recommended separation distances 12-6 Regional citrate anticoagulation 2-5.7-15 Relocation 10-1 Resetting the alarm limit windows 5-12 Return pressure 12-12, 13-3 Return pressure sensor (blue) 3-11 Return system 13-3 Right side view of the device 3-5 Rinsing 12-9 Rocker switch buttons 3-13 RS 232 port 3-3

S

Scale 1 (green) 3-2 Scale 2 (white) 3-2 Scale system 12-11 Scales 3-1 Screen colours 3-13 Screen failure sensor 3-6 Service port 3-3 ServiceCard 13-1, 13-3 Setting the level in the bubble catcher 4-83 Setting the pressure alarm limit values 3-21 Side effects 2-5 Specifications 12-1 Status bar 3-12 Storage 10-3 Storage conditions 10-4 Substituate 13-3 Substituate pump 3-11 Surface cleaning / surface disinfection 6-1 Switching balancing off/on 4-93 Switching off Ci-Ca anticoagulation 4-99 Switching on Ci-Ca anticoagulation 4-100 Symbols 13-4 System Parameters 4-110, 12-9 Systemic anticoagulation 2-4, 7-15 Systemic calcium concentration 13-3

Т

Target group 2-7 Technical Safety Checks / maintenance procedures 11-1 Temperature 4-18, 4-45, 4-66 Terms 13-1 Therapies, description 7-1 Therapy restrictions 2-7 Tip symbol, significance 2-3 TMP 12-13 Touchscreen panel 3-6 Transport 10-3 Treatment 12-9 Treatment data. CVVH 7-4 Treatment data, CVVHD 7-8 Treatment data, CVVHDF 7-11 Treatment data, Pre-Post CVVH 7-6 Treatment data, TPE 7-14 Treatment displays 4-82 Treatment pause 12-9 Treatment pause (circulation with NaCl solution) 4-89 Treatment pause (circulation with recirculation connector) 4-90 Treatment pause without blood reinfusion 4-88

Treatment therapies and fields of application 2-4 Treatment time 4-106, 13-3 Trolley with brakes 3-1

U

UF rate 3-19 UF/BF 5-9 Ultrafiltration 12-10 User interface 3-12 UserCard 13-1, 13-3 Using the card slot 3-8

V

Vascular access 7-1

W

Warning about electrical safety 2-10 Warning symbol, significance 2-2 Warnings relating to consumables and accessories 2-11 Warnings, electrical 2-10 Weight 12-1 Wheels with brakes 3-4

2 Important information

2.1 How to use the Instructions for Use

| Device type | In this document, unless always refers to the mul | otherwise stated, the word "device" on its own tiFiltratePRO device. | |
|--|---|--|--|
| Identification | The document can be id page and on the labels, - Software version of t - Edition of the docum - Date of issue of the d - Part number of the d | entified by the following information on the title if any: he device ent document ocument | |
| Footer | The footer contains the - Company name Device type The English abbrevia abbreviation for the or Instructions for Use i The edition identifica released in 2013. The page identification | following information: tion for the document type and the international locument language, e.g., IFU-EN means n English. tion, for example, 4A-2013 refers to edition 4A on, for example, 1-3 refers to chapter 1, page 3. | |
| Organisation of the | To facilitate the use of documents from Fresenius Medical Care, the organisation of the chapters has been standardised in all manuals. There may therefore be chapters within this document without any content. Chapters without content are marked accordingly. | | |
| chapters | organisation of the chap There may therefore be content. Chapters witho | ters has been standardised in all manuals. chapters within this document without any ut content are marked accordingly. | |
| Styles used in the document | organisation of the chap There may therefore be content. Chapters witho The following text styles | oters has been standardised in all manuals. chapters within this document without any ut content are marked accordingly. may be used in the document: | |
| chapters Styles used in the document | organisation of the chap There may therefore be content. Chapters witho The following text styles Style | ters has been standardised in all manuals. chapters within this document without any ut content are marked accordingly. may be used in the document: Description | |
| Styles used in the document | To facilitate the use of d organisation of the chap There may therefore be content. Chapters witho The following text styles Style Keys and buttons | ters has been standardised in all manuals. chapters within this document without any ut content are marked accordingly. may be used in the document: Description Keys and buttons on the device are shown in bold type. | |
| Chapters Styles used in the document | organisation of the use of d organisation of the chap There may therefore be content. Chapters witho The following text styles Style Keys and buttons | ters has been standardised in all manuals. chapters within this document without any ut content are marked accordingly. may be used in the document: Description Keys and buttons on the device are shown in bold type. Example: Example button | |
| chapters Styles used in the document | The following text styles Style Keys and buttons | beters has been standardised in all manuals. chapters within this document without any ut content are marked accordingly. may be used in the document: Description Keys and buttons on the device are shown in bold type. Example: Example button Device messages are shown in <i>italic type</i> . | |
| Styles used in the document | To facilitate the use of a organisation of the chap There may therefore be content. Chapters witho The following text styles Style Keys and buttons Message text | beters has been standardised in all manuals. chapters within this document without any ut content are marked accordingly. may be used in the document: Description Keys and buttons on the device are shown in bold type. Example: Example button Device messages are shown in <i>italic type</i> . Example: Message: Example message | |
| Styles used in the document | The following text styles Style Keys and buttons Message text ➤ Instructions | beters has been standardised in all manuals. chapters within this document without any ut content are marked accordingly. may be used in the document: Description Keys and buttons on the device are shown in bold type. Example: Example button Device messages are shown in <i>italic type</i> . Example: Message: <i>Example message</i> Instructions are indicated by an arrow ≫. Instructions must be followed. | |
| Styles used in the document | The following text styles Style Keys and buttons Message text ➤ Instructions | beters has been standardised in all manuals. chapters within this document without any ut content are marked accordingly. may be used in the document: Description Keys and buttons on the device are shown in bold type. Example: Example button Device messages are shown in <i>italic type</i> . Example: Message: <i>Example message</i> Instructions are indicated by an arrow ≫. Instructions must be followed. Example: > Carry out instruction. | |
| Styles used in the document | The following text styles Style Keys and buttons Message text >> Instructions 1. Numbered Instructions 2 | ters has been standardised in all manuals. chapters within this document without any ut content are marked accordingly. may be used in the document: Description Keys and buttons on the device are shown in bold type. Example: Example button Device messages are shown in <i>italic type</i>. Example: Message: <i>Example message</i> Instructions are indicated by an arrow ≫. Instructions must be followed. Example: > Carry out instruction. Long passages containing instructions can be shown as numbered lists. Instructions must be followed. | |

| Illustrations | The illustrations used in the documents may differ from the original if this does not have any influence on the function. |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Importance of the instructions | The Instructions for Use are part of the accompanying documents and are an essential part of the device. They include all the necessary information for operating the device. |
| | The Instructions for Use must be carefully studied before attempting to operate the device. |
| Changes | Changes to documents will be released as new editions or supplements. In general, this manual is subject to change without notice. |
| Reproduction | Reproduction, even in part, is only permitted with written approval. |

2.2 Significance of warnings

Advises the operator of hazards that carry the risk of serious to potentially life-threatening bodily injury to persons, unless the measures for avoiding the risk described are followed.



Warning

Type of hazard and risk

Possible consequences of exposure to the risk.

> Measures for avoiding the risk.

Warnings can deviate from the above template in the following cases:

- If a warning describes several risks
- If no specific risks can be detailed in the warning

2.3 Significance of notes



Note

Advises the operator that the following effects can be expected in the event of failure to observe this information:

- Damage to the device.
- Required functions failing to run at all or running incorrectly.

2.4 Significance of tips



Tip

Information providing useful tips for easy handling.

2.5 Brief description

The device enables extracorporeal blood purification procedures to be performed. It controls and monitors the extracorporeal blood circuit.

There are four operating buttons on the monitor. Input of treatment parameters and operator control is effected mostly by way of a highresolution touchscreen. While treatment is in progress, the treatment parameters are displayed.

Tube pumps are used to convey the blood, filtrate, dialysate, substituate or blood plasma, as well as the citrate and calcium solutions if citrate anticoagulation is used, depending on the procedure. For volume replacement therapies, balancing is gravity-controlled using scales, while integrated heaters can be used to heat the dialysate, substituate or replacement plasma as necessary, depending on the treatment mode.

In the extracorporeal blood circuit, the blood is passed through a filter or an adsorber. The blood can be continuously anticoagulated. An air bubble detector prevents the infusion of air to the patient. Any dangerous loss of blood is prevented by a blood leak detector and by monitoring the return pressure. The access pressure monitoring unit can detect an occlusion of the needle or catheter, e.g. due to suction to the vessel wall.

The device is classified as class IIb equipment (MDD).

2.6 Intended use

2.6.1 Intended purpose

The device is intended for use in continuous renal replacement therapy, haemoperfusion procedures and therapeutic plasma exchange.

2.6.2 Specification of use

The device has been specified by the manufacturer for the following purposes:

- The treatment of patients with a body weight of 40 kg and more, irrespective of their age, under consideration of the specified technical data of the device and the single-use items used (e.g., delivery rates, fill volumes) (see chapter 12.11 on page 12-12).
- Operation in suitable rooms in professional health care facilities. Normative and local regulations must be observed.

Consumables with a service life adapted to the duration of therapy have to be used for the treatment; see specification in the instructions for use of the consumables.

2.6.3 Treatment therapies and fields of application

| CRRT treatment mode | Field of application |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Pre CVVH, Post CVVH | Acute renal insufficiency |
| Pre-Post CVVH, CVVHD | Removal of toxic metabolic products |
| Pre CVVHDF, Post CVVHDF | Treatment of life-threatening electrolyte imbalance, e.g., hyperkalaemia |
| | - Correction of the acid-base balance, e.g., metabolic acidosis |
| | Diuretic-resistant fluid retention, especially in the event of cardiac insufficiency or pulmonary oedema |
| CytoSorb in CRRT | See above plus increased cytokine levels in the blood |
| Therapeutic apheresis procedures | Field of application |
| TPE | Removal of plasma, e.g. for the removal of pathological immunoglobulins, for the removal of protein-bound toxins or for the administration of sufficient quantities of physiological proteins contained in donor plasma. |

2.6.4 Anticoagulation of the extracorporeal blood circuit

| | Most patients need anticoagulation to prevent their blood from clotting in the extracorporeal blood circuit. This can be performed systemically, i.e. also in the patient's body, or regionally limited to the extracorporeal blood circuit. |
|--------------------------|---|
| Systemic anticoagulation | The integrated heparin pump can be used for the continuous anticoagulation of the blood. |

| Regional citrate anticoagulation | The Ci-Ca function integrated in the system permits regional anticoagulation in the extracorporeal blood circuit with citrate. It can be used on most patients with CRRT indication. Exceptions (see chapter 2.6.6 on page 2-6). This function is intended to be used for adults and can be indicated particularly in the following cases: |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| | Patients with a bleeding risk, that is, patients on whom systemic anticoagulation cannot be used at all or only to a degree that is inadequate for continuous renal replacement therapy. |
| | Patients with whom the haemofilter rapidly and repeatedly becomes clogged when different anticoagulation methods are used. |
| | Heparin intolerance. |
| | If citrate anticoagulation is used, attention must be paid to risks regarding the acid-base balance and the electrolyte concentrations. Further information (see chapter 7.3.2 on page 7-15). |
| | |

2.6.5 Side effects

Extracorporeal therapies occasionally cause hypotension, nausea, vomiting and cramps in some patients. In rare cases, allergic reactions can occur. Pay particular attention to the package inserts enclosed with the solutions, filters, etc. used.

During extracorporeal treatments, particularly during CRRT treatments, the concentrations of different electrolytes (sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, phosphate) can become too high or too low and an acid-base imbalance can occur. Such situations can be prevented and treated by selecting adequate CRRT solutions and by an additional substitution of electrolytes, if necessary.

The operating conditions in the extracorporeal blood circuit may lead to patient heat loss.

Among other things, this depends on the room temperature and the treatment parameters, particularly with low flow rates or if a heater is intentionally switched off.

The heaters of the device have been designed to heat dialysate, haemofiltration solution, FFP (Fresh Frozen Plasma) and plasma replacement solution and thus counteract heat loss. As the heating must be limited for safety reasons, heat loss cannot always be fully compensated. For this reason, the patient's body temperature must always be monitored.



Note

Electrolyte imbalances (especially hypokalaemia, hypophosphataemia) are more likely to occur with high CRRT doses, as an unbalanced composition of the CRRT solution can have a more pronounced effect.

Systematic anticoagulation with heparin Systemic anticoagulation increases the risk of bleeding. There is also the risk of heparin-induced thrombocytopaenia, particularly when using unfractionated heparin. The patient information leaflet for the anticoagulants used must be observed.

| | Regional citrate anticoagulation | Metabolic acid-base disorders (acidosis, alkalosis) Systemic hypocalcemia or hypercalcemia Hypomagnesaemia Hypernatraemia Side effects caused by a disordered citrate metabolism |
|-------|-------------------------------------|---|
| | | For more detailed information on situations in which these risks might occur and on the options for reducing the occurrence of these risks (see chapter 7.3.2 on page 7-15). |
| 2.6.6 | Contraindications | |
| | | The contraindications of all the tubing systems, filters, dialysers and solutions intended for use in a therapy must be observed. |
| | | Inadequate vascular access to the venous blood circuit, e.g., with a double-lumen central venous catheter, so that the blood flow necessary for treatment cannot be achieved. |
| | Systemic anticoagulation | Systemic anticoagulation is often contraindicated for patients with bleeding or a high risk of bleeding. Here, measures should be taken within the treatment regimen which permit a renal replacement treatment with little or no anticoagulation. A regional citrate anticoagulation can be applied where appropriate. |
| | Regional citrate anticoagulation | An established disordered citrate metabolism is an absolute contraindication. |
| | | In case of a disordered citrate metabolism, CRRT treatment should be considered with a bicarbonate-containing HF solution. Here, anticoagulation of the extracorporeal blood circuit might not be necessary under certain circumstances. |
| | | If, for example, a disordered citrate metabolism is suspected because of a restricted liver function, citrate anticoagulation can still be started, but only under particularly intensive monitoring. In this case, the signs of systemic citrate accumulation must be observed closely. This applies especially to a decrease in the systemic ionised calcium, high calcium substitution requirements for stabilising the ionised calcium and to an increase in systemic total calcium (see chapter 7.3.2.3 on page 7-21). |
| | | With regional citrate anticoagulation, a quantity of citrate is unavoidably infused systemically and must be metabolised by the patient by consuming oxygen. A case of poisoning that adversely influences this oxidative metabolism therefore presents a contraindication for citrate anticoagulation. Evidence suggests that this is the case for poisoning with paracetamol and metformin. |
| | | If hypocalcaemia already exists before beginning the treatment, this should always be balanced by calcium substitution, for example, unless there is a clinical indication to suggest otherwise. |
| | | Note Treatment in connection with citrate anticoagulation must only be |

Treatment in connection with citrate anticoagulation must only be performed in an intensive care unit or under similar conditions with close medical supervision and continuous monitoring.

2.6.7 Interaction with other systems

The use of line roller pumps may lead to minimal electrostatic discharge into the tubing system due to friction on the pump segment. As the charge is very low, these discharges do not represent a direct hazard to patients or operators. If ECG units are used at the same time, these discharges may, in rare cases, cause periodic interferences of the ECG signal.

In order to minimise this interference, it is advisable to observe the recommendations of the ECG device manufacturer, e.g.:

- correct positioning of the electrodes.
- use of specific electrodes with low contact impedance.

2.6.8 Therapy restrictions

Regional citrateCitrate anticoagulation is available for adult patients for CVVHD and
CVVHDF.

2.6.9 Target group

The device must only be installed, operated and used by individuals with the appropriate training, knowledge and experience, and who are certified to have been trained.

2.7 Please note the following when working on the device



Warning

Risk of injury for the patient and operator as a result of improper servicing performed on the device

Improper servicing can impair the safe functioning of the device.

Make sure that start-up, extensions, adjustments, calibrations, maintenance procedures, modifications or repairs are only carried out by the manufacturer or persons authorised by the manufacturer.

More information on installation (see chapter 9 on page 9-1).

More information on Technical Safety Checks and maintenance procedures (see chapter 11 on page 11-1).

Use only spare parts approved by the manufacturer.

For identifying and ordering spare parts, test equipment and tools, always use the electronic spare parts catalogue.

For additional information about transportation and storage, (see chapter 10 on page 10-1).

2.8 Expected service life

If the Technical Safety Checks are performed to the full extent specified and at the prescribed intervals, the safe operation of the device in the time between them is guaranteed.

In addition, the manufacturer recommends that maintenance procedures be performed at the same time intervals to avoid device malfunctions caused by wear and tear.

With each Technical Safety Check, the "expected service life" according to IEC 60601-1 will therefore be prolonged until the next prescribed Technical Safety Check.

2.9 Duties of the responsible organisation

| Specification | The responsible organisation is responsible for ensuring that the following specifications are met: Compliance with the national or local regulations concerning the installation, operation, use, and maintenance of the device. Compliance with the accident prevention regulations. Ensuring the proper and safe condition of the device. Ensuring the permanent availability of the Instructions for Use. The device may only be operated under the operating conditions specified by the manufacturer. |
|--------------------------|--|
| | To enhance treatment quality and patient safety, the manufacturer recommends following IEC/TR 62653 "Guideline for safe operation of medical devices used for haemodialysis treatment". The guideline describes the requirements for using haemodialysis systems safely and for their intended purpose. |
| Training and instruction | Before the responsible organisation may begin operating the device, the individual responsible for operation must have been instructed by the manufacturer on how to use the device, with certification of their instruction, and must be thoroughly familiar with the contents of the Instructions for Use. The device must only be operated by individuals who have been trained and certified in the proper operation and handling of the device. |
| | The manufacturer provides training for this device. |
| | The local service support organisation is available to answer any further questions (see chapter 2.14 on page 2-13). |

2.10 Operator responsibility

The addresses given herein must be used to notify the manufacturer of any unexpected operation behavior or other incidents (see chapter 2.14 on page 2-13).



Warning

Risk of injury as a result of a device defect

Treatment cannot be performed properly and safely with a defective device.

- \succ Do not perform a treatment with a defective device.
- Take the device out of service and disconnect it from the power supply.
- If a treatment is in progress, start a blood reinfusion and terminate the treatment. Perform a manual blood reinfusion, if necessary (see chapter 5.18 on page 5-22).
- > Notify the responsible organisation or service support.
- Replace any damaged accessories.

The device can be considered defective in any of the following cases:

- The device has mechanical defects
- The power cable is damaged
- The device does not react as expected
- The performance characteristics of the device deteriorate

The following must be observed when entering parameters:

- The parameters entered must be verified by the operator, i.e., the operator must check that the values entered are correct.
- If this check reveals a deviation between the desired parameters and the parameters displayed on the device, the setting must be corrected before activating the function.
- The actual values displayed must be compared with the prescribed target values.

2.11 Disclaimer of liability



Warning

Chapter 8 (see chapter 8 on page 8-1) contains a list of consumables and accessories that are suitable for use with this device and can be used safely with it.

The manufacturer cannot guarantee that other consumables and accessories than those listed in this chapter are suitable for use with this device. The manufacturer cannot guarantee that the safety and performance of the device will remain unimpaired if consumables and accessories other than those listed in this chapter are used.

If other consumables and accessories are used, their suitability must be verified beforehand. This can be done with the aid of the information in the instructions accompanying such consumables and accessories.

The manufacturer accepts no liability for damage to the device resulting from the use of unsuitable consumables or accessories.

2.12 Warnings

2.12.1 Warning about electrical safety



Warning

Risk of injury as a result of an electric shock

Without a protective earth connection, there is a risk of electric shock.

 Always connect the device to a power supply network with a protective earth.



Warning

Risk of injury as a result of an electric shock

There is a risk of electric shock if the patient comes into contact with the pins or contacts of the device's connectors, whether directly or indirectly through the operator.

> Avoid touching connector pins or contacts during treatment.



Warning

Risk of injury as a result of an electric shock

For treatments using a central venous catheter, if the tip is positioned in the patient's right atrium, the following precautions must be observed:

- Make sure the device (multiFiltratePRO) is connected to the grounded equipotential zone of the installation.
- Move all non-medical and medical electrical equipment with touch currents or patient leakage currents in excess of the limits for type CF applied parts out of reach of the patient (more than 1.5 metres away in every direction).

The touch current or patient leakage current of non-medical or medical electrical equipment can be conducted to ground over the patient's central venous catheter and over the type B or BF applied part of the device (multiFiltratePRO).



Patient leakage current limits for type CF applied parts:

- 10 µA AC / DC (normal condition, i.e., no fault condition)
- 50 µA AC / DC (single fault condition)

Please address any queries to the local service support organisation.

2.12.2 Warnings relating to consumables and accessories



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of improper handling of connection sites

Pathogens can enter the extracorporeal blood circuit.

> Use aseptic technique for all blood system connections and all the connections of the sterile solutions to be used.



Warning

Risk of cross-contamination as a result of contaminated consumables

There is a risk of spreading germs.

> Consumables must be discarded after a treatment in compliance with the regulations for the disposal of potentially contaminated materials.

2.13 SVHC (REACH)

For information on the topic of SVHC in accordance with Article 33 of Regulation (EC) 1907/2006 ("REACH"), visit the following website:

www.freseniusmedicalcare.com/en/svhc



2.14 Addresses

| Manufacturer | Fresenius Medical Care AG & Co. KGaA D-61346 Bad Homburg Germany Phone: +49 (0) 6172 609-0 www.fmc-ag.com |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Service support, international | Fresenius Medical Care Deutschland GmbH Technical Operations Technical Coordination Office (TCO) Hafenstrasse 9 D-97424 Schweinfurt Germany |
| | Service support, local |
| | |

3 Design

3.1 Views of the device

3.1.1 Front view



- 2 Monitor
- 3 Extracorporeal Blood Circuit Module
- Scales 3 and 4
- 5 Trolley with brakes
- 6 Right IV pole

3.1.2 **Rear view**



- Scale 2 (white) Push handle 1
- 2
- 3 Connector strip
- 4 Accessories case
- Power label 5
- Identification label 6
- 7 Scale 1 (green)

3.1.2.1 Connector strip



- **1** Equipotential bonding connection
- **2** Power supply connection
- 3 Luer lock connection for manually opening the pressure measurement units
- 4 LAN (local area network) network connection
- 5 Nurse call port
- 6 1st RS 232 serial port with 5 V power supply
- 7 2nd RS 232 serial port
- 8 Service port (only for service engineers)
- 9 Power switch

Left side view 3.1.3



- 1
- Heater (green) Wheels with brakes 2
- 3 Heater (white)
- 4 Push handles

3.1.4 Right side view



- 1 Card slot
- 2 Filter holder
- 3 Heparin pump

3.2 Controls and indicators

3.2.1 Monitor front



3.2.2 Monitor rear



Legend

- 1 Card slot
- 2 Recessed grip
- 3 Monitor arm
- 4 Loudspeaker

3.2.3 Positioning the monitor



Position the monitor with the aid of the recessed grips (a) on either side.

The monitor can be swivelled **(b)** and tilted **(c)** for positioning.

3.2.4 Using the card slot



Insert the card into the card slot (b).

3.2.5 Positioning the filter holder



Open the lever (**a**) towards the left and insert the filter.

Turn the filter holder until the filter is in the required position (**b**).

Insert the tubing systems into the line holders intended for them (\mathbf{c}) .
3.2.6 Heparin pump



Legend

- **1** Barrel holders with syringe detector
- 2 Bracket
- **3** Jaws of the spring clip
- 4 Stock
- 5 Spring clip

3.2.7 Heater



Legend

- 1 Label Warning: Hot surface
- 2 Microswitch

Detects a distended heater bag in the event of an error to ensure that the heater is switched off and treatment is stopped.

- 3 Temperature sensors
- 4 Heating element
- 5 Line holder (green or white)



3.2.8 Extracorporeal Blood Circuit Module

Legend

- **1** Return pressure sensor (blue)
- 2 Dialysate pump/Predilution substituate pump (depends on treatment mode)
- **3** Citrate pump (green)
- 4 Citrate drip counter/Citrate fill level detector (green)
- 5 Fill level detector
- 6 Substituate pump
- 7 Air bubble detector/Optical detector
- 8 Calcium pump (white)
- **9** Calcium drip counter/Calcium fill level detector (white)
- **10** Blood leak detector (yellow)
- **11** Line occlusion clamp (red)
- **12** Filtrate pressure measurement unit (yellow)
- **13** Line occlusion clamp (blue)
- 14 Filtrate pump
- **15** Access pressure measurement unit (red)
- 16 Blood pump
- 17 Cassette detector
- 18 Pre-filter pressure measurement unit (red)

3.3 User interface



Legend

A Status bar

- 1 Treatment mode
- 2 Anticoagulation method
- 3 Current menu
- 4 Balancing status/plasma treatment status indicator green: Balancing/plasma treatment on yellow: Balancing/plasma treatment off
- 5 Progress bar: Time remaining before next operator action/ time remaining for processes in progress
- **B** Pressure displays
- 6 Access pressure
- 7 Return pressure
- 8 Pre-filter pressure
- C Menu bar
 - During operation, each menu will open automatically as needed. Alternatively, you can press on any of the available menu buttons to open the menu concerned.
 - Monitor symbol in menu button PREPARATION

(deactivates/reactivates the monitor for cleaning during operation).

D Menu panel

The main part of the screen shows the appropriate data fields of the active menu.

- 9 Display/input field
- 10 Rocker switch buttons
- 11 Information area
- Shows messages and graphs
- 12 Quick access buttons For menu options

3.4 General operating concept

3.4.1 Colour coding on the device and single-use articles

Mistake proofing

The colour coding on the device and on the single-use articles helps you identify connections correctly and insert items in their proper place.

3.4.2 Screen colours



Legend

 BLUE means: can be selected Examples: Heparin field and MENUS button
 GREEN means: active Examples: Information tab Pressure / alarm history and TREATMENT button 3 GREY means: not active/cannot be selected Example: **PREPARATION** button

3.4.3 Context-specific information

In the input windows of the display/input fields, additional, important information is shown on the left of the number buttons.



> Press the **Ca dose** field.

The input window opens. On the left of the number buttons, additional,

context-specific information is displayed.

Press the Ca button in the context-specific information area. The calcium dosage target range and adjustment steps are displayed.



3.5 Basic input procedures

3.5.1 Changing settings with the rocker switch buttons



> Use the + *I* – rocker switch buttons (A) to set the required flow.

3.5.2 Changing settings with the number buttons



- Press the relevant display/input field. The input window opens.
- Enter the new value with the aid of the number buttons. Grey buttons prevent invalid entries.
- \succ Check the new value against the target value.
- To correct your entry, press the C button. The last active value will be displayed.
- Press the **OK** button to apply the displayed value. The input window is closed.
- \succ The applied value is checked.

3.5.3 Entering data with the keyboard



Press the relevant display/input field. The input window opens.

 \succ Use the keyboard to enter the required data.

(Å) Shift between upper case and lower case letters using the **arrow (up/down)** buttons.

(B) Press the **Pos1** button to move the cursor to the beginning of the line.

(C) Move the cursor to a different position in the line using the **arrow (left/right)** buttons.

(D) Press the **Ins** button to switch between overtype mode and insert mode.

- \succ Check the entered data.
- > To correct your entry, press the **C** button.
- Press the OK button to apply the displayed data. The input window is closed.

3.5.4 On/Off button



- Press the Heparin field. The input window opens.
- > Press the **I/O** button.

This activates the input window (number buttons).



- Enter the required heparin flow with the aid of the number buttons. Grey buttons prevent invalid entries.
- \succ Check the new value against the target value.
- To correct your entry, press the C button. The last active value will be displayed.

- Press the **OK** button to apply the displayed value. The input window is closed.
- \succ The applied value is checked.

3.5.5 Viewing the ratio of the UF rate to the blood flow rate



The UF/BF ratio is shown in the field between the rocker switch buttons of the blood pump, and also in the input windows of the following fields, as context-specific information:

Substituate (in postdilution mode) Net UF rate Blood flow

3.5.6 Viewing the pressure values

The device incorporates an automatic limit monitoring system. This helps avoid superfluous error messages that could otherwise occur, for example, when a patient shifts position.

The asymmetric return pressure limit values are set by default to ensure a rapid reaction to a loss of pressure.



The pressure values are always shown on the left of the screen and depend on the treatment type.

- (A) Access pressure (red arrow)
- (B) Return pressure (blue arrow)
- (C) Pre-filter pressure (Pre-F)
- (D) Transmembrane pressure (TMP)

The actual values are shown as numerical values and indicated by the green line over the pressure alarm window in each case.

The pressure alarm window is shown in the form of a rectangular tile in each case.

3.5.7 Setting the pressure alarm limit values



Press on the required pressure display field. The input window opens.

- Select the type of change you wish to make.
 (A) Change the pressure alarm window size
 - (B) Move the pressure alarm window size
- Use the + / rocker switch buttons to change the limit parameter values accordingly.
- > Check the limit parameters you have set.
- Press the **OK** button to apply the new limit parameters. The input window is closed.
- To correct your entry, press the C button. The last active pressure alarm window will be applied.

By pressing the **Auto** button, you can reset the pressure alarm windows for all the pressure types automatically around the current values. This does not change the size of the pressure alarm windows.

4 **Operation**



Note

The screens shown in the Instructions for Use may differ from those displayed on the device.

On the device, the current treatment mode is always displayed in the upper left-hand corner of the screen in the status bar. For technical reasons, the screens figuring in the Instructions for Use do not always represent the selected treatment mode.

The values shown in the screenshots are for illustrative purposes only. All treatment parameters must be entered as specified by the physician.

The device must be operated according to the instructions on the screen.

4.1 Application principles



Warning

Danger in case of excessive load on the IV pole (observe the maximum load)



An excessively heavy load on the IV poles can overturn the device.

> Do not exceed the maximum permitted load of 5.5 kg on the IV pole.



Warning

Risk of embolism as a result of particle reinfusion

Use the dialysate and substituate in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of unsuitable infusion solutions

For the treatment modes CVVHDF and CVVH, only solutions that are suitable for infusion must be used.



Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance due to incorrect selection of dialysate and substituate

- After changing the treatment mode, change the solutions if necessary.
- Adjust the flow ratios of the solutions in relation to each other and in relation to the blood flow.



Warning

Risk of cross-contamination as a result of tubing systems without hydrophobic filters

There is a risk of spreading germs.

 Only use tubing systems with hydrophobic filters in the pressure lines.



Warning

Risk of cross-contamination as a result of a wrong proceeding in case of a wet or defective hydrophobic filter

There is a risk of spreading germs.

- Never force back any fluid with a syringe (damages the hydrophobic filter).
- \succ Make sure the pressure line is tightly sealed.
- Replace the affected tubing system. In the case of a pressure line with a wetted hydrophobic filter, use a replacement pressure line (accessory available from manufacturer).

If you cannot exclude the possibility that the device may have become contaminated:

- > Take the device out of service after completing treatment.
- > Have the device tested for contamination by service support.

If the device is contaminated, all affected parts must be disinfected or replaced by service support.



Warning

Risk of injury as a result of hot surfaces

Touching the inside of the heaters can result in burns.

Do not touch the inside of the heaters during treatment.



Warning

Risk of crush injury from pressure measurement unit when closing

> Keep fingers clear of open pressure measurement units.



Risk of crush injury when closing line occlusion clamp

 \succ Keep fingers clear of open line occlusion clamps.

Warning



Risk for the patient as a result of corrupted data

Objects placed on top of the tilted monitor can inadvertently change treatment data.

> Do not place any objects on top of the monitor.



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of improper handling of singleuse items and consumables

Single-use items and consumables can come into contact with germs when removed from their outer packaging.

Do not unpack and insert single-use items and consumables until immediately before beginning treatment.



Warning

Warning

Risk of blood loss as a result of damaged tubing systems

Risk of circulatory disturbance as a result of fluid loss

There is a risk of blood and plasma loss.

In long treatments, replace tubing systems before the end of their service life as specified by the manufacturer or when a warning message is displayed by the device.

Preparation times also count as part of the service life. The service life information is printed on the packaging of the tubing systems. Any specified limit values or warning messages of the device are ignored at the operator's own risk.



Risk of blood loss as a result of an undetectable dislocation

Risk of blood loss as a result of an undetectable leakage

A leak in the tubing system and/or a dislocation of the return line can result in the patient suffering a serious loss of blood.

The lower return pressure limit value must be set as close as possible to the actual return pressure value.



Risk for the patient as a result of improper use of consumables

Treatment cannot be performed properly and safely if consumables are used incorrectly.

> Follow the instructions that come with the consumables used.



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of damaged tubing systems

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

Risk of blood loss as a result of damaged tubing systems

Risk of blood loss as a result of connection sites not closed correctly

Risk of haemolysis as a result of a kinked and crushed tubing system

Risk of circulatory disturbance as a result of fluid loss

- \succ When inserting the tubing system, observe the following:
- Only use the tubing system specified for the selected treatment mode.
- Consumables must only be used if the packaging and the consumable itself, including any protective caps or plugs, are undamaged. Protective caps and plugs must be in place and must not have fallen off.
- Before connecting the patient, make sure the tubing system is free of air.
- Insert tubing systems cleanly, without kinks, line tension or twisting. Use the line holders provided.
- Make sure the tubing systems cannot become crushed or pinched.
- Make sure all screw-lock joints are properly tightened, particularly those of the patient connections, the dialyser connections, and the device connections. Take the appropriate corrective measures (e.g., tighten the Luer lock connections, or replace the tubing system if necessary).
- Always check the solution bags for visible leaks before connecting them to the tubing system.



Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

Risk of haemolysis as a result of a kinked and crushed tubing system

Risk of blood loss as a result of connection sites not closed correctly

Risk of circulatory disturbance as a result of fluid loss

- Before starting a treatment, check the following:
- All the joints of the tubing system are securely connected
- There are no apparent leaks in the tubing system, either during or after filling
- Tighten connections as needed, or, if necessary, replace the entire tubing system
- The tubing system is free of air, is inserted cleanly without kinks, line tension or twisting, and all fluid levels are correct



Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

Risk of haemolysis as a result of a kinked and crushed tubing system

Risk of blood loss as a result of connection sites not closed correctly

Risk of circulatory disturbance as a result of fluid loss

- > During treatment, check the following at appropriate intervals:
- The condition of the patient.
- The volume balancing and fluid removal monitoring systems.
- The correct function of the device and the extracorporeal blood circuit. To protect the patient from dangerous blood loss, return pressure monitoring of the extracorporeal blood circuit is used as a safety system against external blood leaks. However, pressure monitoring cannot detect an external blood leak in all cases. Particularly critical occurrences are dislocations of the return line or small leaks in the high pressure components of the extracorporeal blood circuit must be checked regularly for leaks while treatment is in progress, paying particular attention to all the joints of the tubing system and the connections to the catheters.
- The tubing system, watching out for possible leaks, air ingress, or loosened joints. Particularly at the joints downstream of the air detector, negative pressure can permit air to enter into the extracorporeal blood circuit. This can be a problem when using central venous catheters.
- Check that the tubing system is not kinked, under tension, or twisted.
- The filtrate and dialysate circuits, watching out for leaks.
- Discolouration in the filtrate bag caused by blood loss.



Risk of contamination as a result of improper handling of connection sites

Pathogens can enter the extracorporeal blood circuit.

Use aseptic technique for all blood system connections and all the connections of the sterile solutions to be used.



Note

If clotting occurs despite citrate anticoagulation, this can be an indication of severe HIT (type 2) in the patient. Sufficiently large filters must always be used!



Note

Note

Scales:

The maximum load capacity of 12 kg per scale must not be exceeded. The weighing cell can even be permanently damaged by a short-term overload (e.g., pulling or lifting the device by the scales), in which case the device can no longer be used.



. .

Blood pump rotor:

The blood pump rotor has red markings, including the arrow showing the direction of rotation, and must only be installed in the blood pump, which is marked by a matching red dot.



Blood leak/haemolysis monitoring:

The filtrate line must remain in the blood leak detector (yellow) for the entire duration of the treatment.



Note

Note

When administering drugs or connecting infusions via the access line, make sure the substances used will survive the dialyser. The effectiveness of the intended treatment may depend on this.

When working on the tubing system during a treatment, observe the following:

If you need to move any part of the tubing system out of position, make sure the correct layout of the entire tubing system is restored before continuing treatment, paying special attention to the correct placement of the positioners.

General description of the CVVH, CVVHD, CVVHDF and Pre-Post CVVH procedures with information on the differences between the individual therapies.

4.2.1 Switching on the device and starting the function test



There must be no load on any of the scales.

Switch on the device with the On/Off button.

The software version, date and time will be displayed.

Press the Start button to start the function test.



4.2.2 Selecting the treatment option



 \succ Select the treatment option.

Press the **Continue** button to continue the previous treatment.

4.2.3 Continuing the previous treatment

| CVVHDF Post | Heparin <u>Ci (0</u> | Treatment options | Treatment options | | | 0 75 100 nal test |
|----------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| | | Previous treatment will be cont | tinued | | | |
| Da | tient ID ### | | Enti | re period | | |
| Fa (| Case ID 123 | # 4 | Date 21.11.2018 | Start 12:35 | Duration 00:08 | |
| | | Balancing | 0.30 | T. | _ | |
| | | Substituate volume | 0.00 | Ē. | | |
| | | Dialysate volume | 0.00 | - E | | |
| | | Substituate bolus volume | 0.00 | | | |
| | | Net UF volume | 0.07 | 1.1 | | |
| | | Heparin bolus volume | 0.0 | mi | | |
| | | Continuous heparin volume | 0.0 | ml | | |
| | | Citrate volume | 0.0 | mi | | |
| | | Ca volume | 0.0 | m | | |
| | | Treatment time | 02:09 | h:min | | |
| | | Balance data | | | | |
| | (| | | | 100 | |
| | | Delete | | | (OK) | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | TREATMENT | TREAT | ALE T | | - |
| IONS | PATIENT | PARAMETERS TREATMENT M | Entos EN | 0 | HISTORIES | PARAME |

Press the Retain button to confirm the previous balance data.

Or

- Press the **Delete** button to reset the previous balance data to 0. The Patient ID and Case ID will not be deleted.
- Then press the OK button to confirm your previous selection ("Retain" or "Delete").

4.2.4 Start requirements

| CVVHDF | Heparin | Treatment options | | 0 25 50 | 75 100 1 |
|--------|---------------------------------|--|------------------|------------|----------|
| | | Start requirements for Post CVVHDF | or | Punctional | |
| | Dialysate / Substituate | Ca-containing | | | |
| | Heparin syringe Filtrate bag | Fresenius Injectomat 1 filtrate bag | 50 ml 10 l | | |
| | ٩ | re the start requirements | | | |
| | Back | ulfilled? | ок | | |
| | | NT TREATMENT | MEILUS TREATMENT | HISTORIES | STSTEN |

- Check the contents of the solution bags against the information shown on the screen.
- Press OK to confirm that you have the correct solutions available.

Press the **Back** button to return to the treatment options screen.

4.2.5 Mounting the cassette



You can use the following buttons for mounting the cassette:

Press 💽 to go to the next step.

Press 🕑 to jump to the end of the setup instructions.

Press 🔇 to return to the previous step.

Press () to jump back to the beginning of the setup instructions.



Note

For the CVVH, CVVHD, CVVHDF and Pre-Post CVVH procedures, the multiFiltratePRO Kit HDF is used. For all these treatment modes, the substituate system and the dialysate system need to be mounted and filled. During the CVVHD procedure, the substituate pump is stopped. During the CVVH procedure, the dialysate pump is stopped.

Chapter 4: Operation

CRRT treatments



- Hang up the cassette according to the instructions.
- \succ Fix the filter in the filter holder.
- \succ Press \bigcirc to go to the next step.

4.2.5.1 Mounting the return system



Warning

Risk of air embolism due to loss of function of the air detector

Blood clots (coagula) in the tubing system, contaminations and/or moisture on the air bubble detector can impair the correct function of the air bubble detector.

- > Make sure that the air bubble detector is clean and dry.
- Do not use any ultrasound-conducting objects or media on the air bubble detector.



Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

If the tubing system is not inserted properly, this can prevent the air detection system from working.

When the tubing system is inserted into the air bubble detector/optical detector, the tube must lie along the full length of the tube holder.



Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

- > Insert the tubing system correctly into the line occlusion clamp.
- Do not remove the tubing system from the line occlusion clamp during treatment.



- Mount the return system according to the instructions.
- > Press () to go to the next step.

4.2.5.2 Mounting the access system





Note

Once the first positioner has been inserted, the cassette system can only be dismantled and changed by cancelling the preparation (**Menus** / **Cancel preparation**).

4.2.5.3 Mounting the filtrate system



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of damaged bags

Bags can burst when dropped.

Push filtrate bags as far back as possible onto the hooks of the lower scales.



4.2.5.4 Loading the solution bags



Note

When loading the solution bags onto the scales, make sure the connectors face inwards and to the rear.



4.2.5.5 Mounting the dialysate/substituate systems



Note

When inserting the heater bags, observe the correct colour coding.

Predilution (CVVHDF / CVVH)



- Mount the dialysate/substituate systems according to the instructions.
- > Press () to go to the next step.

• Postdilution (CVVHDF / CVVH / CVVHD)



- Mount the dialysate/substituate systems according to the instructions.
- > Press 💽 to go to the next step.

Predilution/postdilution substituate system (Pre-Post CVVH)



- Mount the predilution/postdilution substituate system according to the instructions.
- Connect the Pre-Post CVVH adapter with the filter connection (green) of the dialysate system and the predilution port (red).

> Press 💽 to go to the next step.

4.2.5.6 Inserting the heparin syringe



Note

Only use the syringe type selected in the Setup and shown on the screen.



Note

When inserting the heparin syringe, observe the following:

- The syringe wings must be positioned between the barrel holders and the bracket.
- The thumb rest of the syringe plunger must be positioned between the jaws of the spring clip on the stock.



Tip

The heparin syringe can be inserted any time after starting treatment by choosing **MENUS/Change syringe** (only if heparin pump is activated).



- Insert the heparin syringe according to the instructions.
- \succ Press \bigcirc to go to the next step.

4.2.5.7 Cassette mounting completed



- > Insert complete cassette.
 - If the **OK** button cannot be selected (greyed out), check the mounted tubing system according to the instructions on the screen.
- Press the OK button to confirm that the tubing system is fully mounted.

If heparin anticoagulation has been selected, the heparin line will be filled automatically after confirmation.

4.2.6 Filling and rinsing the cassette

4.2.6.1 Filling the tubing system



Тір

The default rinse flow of 100 ml/min ensures the best possible deaeration of the filter and tubing system.

| CVVHD Post | F Heparin | | Preparation | | ala di kanalari ana | | |
|---------------|---|-----------------|---------------------------------------|--------|---------------------|-----------|----------------------|
| | | | | | | | |
| | - Open clamps - Break the coner - Check all conne | s on the soluti | Fill tubing system on bags kage | 1 | | 2 | |
| 0 | 2300 | (| Start | | | | |
| OPTIONS PREI | PARATION PATIENT | PARAMETERS | TREATMENT | MEHIUS | END | HISTOPLES | SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

Press the Start button to start filling the tubing system.

Rinsing starts automatically as soon as the correct fill level in the bubble catcher is detected.

The rinse flow can be changed with the +/- rocker switch buttons.

4.2.6.2 Entering the Patient ID and Case ID

Requirements

The **Patient** menu opens automatically when filling is started, if **Jump to Patient menu** is activated. Otherwise, the **Treatment parameters** menu will open automatically when filling is started (see chapter 4.2.6.3 on page 4-17).



Check the Patient ID and Case ID shown. The fields will be empty if no data has yet been entered.

- CVVHDF Heparin Patient Fill tubing s m ¢ Patient ID Case ID Rinse fle 100 m 🗘 · . i d f g h j k x c v b n m У Pre-F
- To change or enter the Patient ID and Case ID, press the relevant field.
- Use the keyboard to enter the required Patient ID and Case ID.
- > Press the **OK** button to apply the displayed value.

| CVVHDF | Heparin | _ | Patient | _ | _ | Fill tubin | g system |
|--|----------|-------------------------|-----------|----------------|------------------|------------|-----------------------------|
| m v | Pat # | ient ID | | Case 1234 | D 1 | | Rinse flow milmin 100 |
| 0 | | | | | | | |
| * \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ | | | | | | | |
| nvrétg -100 | | | | | | | |
| Pre-F 0 750 | | | | | | | |
| nning -50 | | | | | | | |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS PREPARATION | PATIENT | TREATMENT PARAMETERS | TREATMENT | MEILUS | TREATMENT END | HISTORIES | SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

> Check the **Patient ID** and **Case ID** entered.

4.2.6.3 Entering treatment parameters



Note

The bolus function can be used if an initial heparin bolus needs to be administered.

The infusion of anticoagulation fluids is corrected automatically in the overall balance.

Chapter 4: Operation

CRRT treatments

| Post | | arin | Treatment | t parameters | Rinse |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate mith 1000 | Blood flow milime 100 | Rinse flov mtmin 100 |
| 0 | Heparin ^{mi/h} OFF | Heparir ^{mi} 1.0 | start/Stop Start | | |
| | Temperature ^{°C} 38.0 | Substitue ^{mi} 100 | start/Stop Start/Stop Start | | |
| | | | | | |
| 0 | | | | | |
| 0 100 Pre-F 0 750 | | | | | |
| -100 Pre-F 0 750 | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

4.2.6.4 UF Rinse



Note

When using NaCl bags with only one connector, make sure there is enough NaCl solution.

parameters. Temperature:

and off.



If using an NaCl bag with two connectors:

 Check the preset treatment parameters. If necessary, adjust the treatment

Enter the temperature of the dialysate and the substituate (°C). The **Temperature** button can be used to switch the heater on

- Remove return line from empty bag and connect to NaCl solution.
- Press the Start button to start the UF rinse.

If using an NaCl bag with one connector:

- Leave the existing connections as they are.
- Press the Start button to start the UF rinse.

The level in the bubble catcher will be set automatically when the UF rinse is finished.

4.2.7 Circulation



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of non-compliance with hygienic conditions

Keep preparation and circulation times before the treatment as short as possible.



Note

If the patient connection must be delayed, the extracorporeal circuit can be kept in circulation for a certain time after preparation.

To avoid stressing the tubing system for too long, the circulation time is also taken into account when monitoring the kit service life.



Note

In the Setup, circulation can be set to start automatically or to be confirmed by the user.

The factory setting is **Confirm**, since an automatic changeover into circulation mode is only possible if an NaCl solution bag with two connections is used.

CVVHDF Hepari Treatment parameters Net UF rate Substituate Dialysate Blood flow C) OFF 1000 1000 100 Heparin Henarin bolus OFF 1.0 Start Sub uate bolus Temperature m 🗘 38.0 100 Start UF rinse completed -10 For circulation, insert recirculation connector if necessary Pre-F 0

Stop before circulation

After the rinse is completed, the blood pump will stop.

An audible tone is emitted.

- Connect the access and return lines to the recirculation connector.
- Press the Start button to start the circulation.

Or

Press the Preparation button to begin patient connection.

Chapter 4: Operation

CRRT treatments

• Automatic circulation



After the rinse is completed, the circulation will start automatically.

- \succ Prepare to connect the patient.
- Press the Preparation button to stop the blood pump.

4.2.8 Connecting the patient

| CVVHDF Post | Heparin | Preparation | | Circulation |
|----------------------------------|--|---|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| | Heparin bolus mi Start/Stop 1.0 Start | - | | Rinse flow milinin 100 |
| | | | | |
| 0 7779 -100 Pre-F 0 750 | - Connect access line t - Open clamp (red) of a - Check treatment para | Patient connection o patient, or connect access and return ccess line and clamp (blue) of return lin meters and patient data | lines at the same time e | |
| 02 | Circulati Continu | | Blood pump Start | |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS | ATION PATIENT PARA | TMENT TREATMENT N | ITREATMENT H | ISTORIES SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

The blood pump is stopped.

Press the Start button to start the blood pump.

The blood pump will continue operating until the optical detector has detected blood.

If necessary, administer a heparin bolus.

Press the **Continue** button to continue the circulation.

| CVVH Post | DF Her | parin | Treatment pa | rameters | | Patient c | onnection |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|---------------------------|--|-----------|-----------|-----------------------------|
| m 🗘 | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate mi/h 1000 | | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| 0 | Heparin ^{mith} OFF | Heparin ^{ml} 1.0 | start/Stop | | | | |
| | Temperature *C 38.0 | Substitue mi 100 | start/Stop Start | | | | |
| 0 mm+g -100 Pre-F 0 750 | | lf not al | Blood de | tected | | | |
| 0 1111Hg -50 | 2404 | | Star | ent and a second s | | | |
| | REPARATION PAT | | TREATME | rt Menus | TREATMENT | HISTORIES | STSTEM |

4.2.9 Treatment

4.2.9.1 Treatment screen

| Post | | parin | Treatm | ent | 5 | - | Filtrate bag | so o change |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|-------------------------------------|------|-----------|------|--|---|
| 30 300 | Net UF rate mi/h OFF | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate ^{mVh} 1000 | | | | | Blood f milimin 100 |
| | Heparin ^{mi/h} 2.0 | | | | | | | UF/BI 16% |
| 40 500 | Balancing 0.03 | Treatment time h.min 00:05 | | | | | | |
| | Pressure / alarm b | istory Next oper | ator action | | | | | |
| | | L | In the second | | 0-2-2-C-2 | 2000 | | |
| 0 wHg -100 | mettg 400- 300- 200- | 1 | - Fassa | | | | Access Robum Pro-F Fibrate | |
| re-F | meHg 400- 300- 200- 100- D- | | | | | | Access Patun Pro-F Pitrate That | |
| nesi -100 re-F 45 750 | metg 300- 300- 200- 100- - 100- - 300- 300- | 1 | | | | | Access Paturn Pre-F Fitrate The | Switch |
| 0 rre-F 45 750 | 100- 200- 300- 200- 100- - - - 100- - - 200- - 300- | 12.45 21.11. | 1300 | 1915 | 13:30 | | Access Patun Pro-F Pitrate Titrate | Switch prediu Treatm interru |
| 0 rreg -100 Pre-F 45 750 | metti 500 400 200 100 0 - - 100 - - 200 - 300 | 1245 | 1300 | 1315 | 1330 | | Access Return Pro-F Yin de Trop | S with pred |
| vresg -100 Pre-F 45 750 -50 | 100- 100- 100- 100- 200- 100- 200- | 1246 | 1300 | 1215 | 1330 | | Access Potum PreE Prote Trade | Switc predit Ifrata interru Car |

The optical detector has detected blood. The blood pump is stopped.

> Press the **Start** button to start the treatment.

The treatment screen is displayed throughout the entire treatment.

The information area shows important treatment data:

Pressure / alarm history Next operator action

4.2.9.2 Menus



The following menu options can be selected:

 Rocker switch buttons for setting the level in the bubble catcher:

For raising or lowering the level in the bubble catcher.

- Cancel preparation:
 For dismantling (user) / ejecting (device) the tubing system during preparation.
- Treatment interrupted:
- For pausing treatment.
- Switch off balancing / Switch balancing on:
- For switching balancing off and back on. – Change syringe:
 - For changing the heparin syringe.
- Care:
 - For starting Care mode.
 - Switch to predilution/postdilution: For changing between predilution and postdilution methods.
- Bag change:
 - For changing the substituate and dialysate bags and emptying the filtrate bag.

Detailed description of menu options shown (see chapter 4.6 on page 4-83).

4.2.9.3 Histories

| CVVHDF Post | Heparin | | Histories | 5 | | 120 90 e | ag change |
|----------------------|--------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| | Balance data | Balance histor | y Events | 1 | | | Blood flow milmin |
| 50 | | | Current treatment | Entir | e period | 6 | 100 |
| | | | Start: Post CVVHDF | Date 21.11.2018 | Start 12:47 | Duration 00:00 | UF/BF 16% |
| -300 | | | Balancing | 0.03 | 1 | | |
| n () | | | Substituate volume | 0.00 | 1 | | |
| _ 40 soo | | | Dialysate volume | 0.00 | 1 I. | | |
| | | Subs | stituate bolus volume | 0.00 | 8 (B. 6) - | | |
| | | | Net UP volume | 0.00 | | | |
| | | н | leparin bolus volume | 0.0 | mi | | |
| nvelig -100 | | Contine | uous heparin volume | 0.0 | ml | | |
| Pre-F | | | T ura dana and diana | 00.05 | | 8 | |
| 45 750 | | | Filter life | 00:00 | h:min | | Switchto predilution |
| | | | | Reset ha | ance da | | Treatment interrupted |
| nntig -50 | | | | | anec du | | Care |
| 239 | _ | V V | 1 | | | | |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS | ATION | TREATMENT PARAMETERS | TREATMENT | MERIUS | REATMENT END | HISTORIES | STSTEM PARAMETERS |

The following tabs can be selected:

- Balance data
- Balance history
- Events

(see chapter 4.7 on page 4-105)

Pressing the **Reset balance data** button will reset all the cumulative volume information recorded so far to "zero". The treatment time and the filter life will not be reset.
4.2.9.4 System Parameters



In the **System Parameters** screen, only the blue (activated) buttons can be used to open the appropriate options (see chapter 4.8 on page 4-110).

To activate any grey buttons, you will need a ServiceCard or UserCard.

4.2.10 Changing the treatment mode



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of unsuitable infusion solutions

For the treatment modes CVVHDF and CVVH, only solutions that are suitable for infusion must be used.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance due to incorrect selection of dialysate and substituate

- After changing the treatment mode, change the solutions if necessary.
- Adjust the flow ratios of the solutions in relation to each other and in relation to the blood flow.



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of non-compliance with hygienic conditions

There is a risk of spreading germs.

- Observe service life of opened bags as specified by the manufacturer.
- If the service life is exceeded, leave substituate or dialysate deactivated or initiate end of treatment.



Note

Changing the treatment mode is always possible by switching the substituate flow or dialysate flow off/on.

A change of the treatment mode effected in this way can be undone. A change of the treatment mode is shown in the status bar by the greyed-out letters.

Depending on the treatment option you change over to, the various flows, ratios, and connections may need to be adapted. Observe and follow the instructions on the screen.



Note

From the pre-post CVVH treatment mode, it is only possible to change to pre CVVH or post CVVH.

4.2.10.1 Changing the treatment mode from CVVHDF to CVVH



- Select Dialysate and switch off the flow with the I/O button.
- > Press the **OK** button to apply the change.

| Post | DF Her | parin | Treat | ment | 5 | 120 90 Filtrate | 60 30 0 m bag change |
|----------|--|--|--------------------------|------|----------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 30 300 | Net UF rate mi/h OFF | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Diałysate milh OFF | | | | Blood flor milimin 100 |
| | Heparin ^{mi/h} 2.0 | | | | | | UF/BF 16% |
| | Balancing 0.03 | Treatment time htmin 00:05 | | | | | _ |
| | Pressure / alarm h | istory Next oper | ator action | | | | |
| 100 -100 | 400- | | | | | - Access - Return - Pre-F | |
| re-F | 200- | ł | | | | - Fibrate - TMP | |
| 45 750 | 0- -100- | - | | | | | - |
| | -200- | | | | | | predilution |
| | | 21.11. | 13.00 | 1315 | 13:30 | | Treatment |
| 0 | Concession of the local division of the loca | | V | e e | 00 | <u></u> | |
| -50 | | | | | | | |
| rry -50 | | 1000 | | | and the second | | Care |

A change of the treatment mode is shown in the status bar

To undo this change, simply switch the dialysate flow back on with the **I/O** button.

4.2.10.2 Changing the treatment mode from CVVHDF to CVVHD



Note

A substituate bolus is not possible in the CVVHD treatment mode.



- Select Substituate and switch off the flow with the I/O button.
- > Press the **OK** button to apply the change.

Chapter 4: Operation

CRRT treatments

| Pos | t | perm | Treatr | nent | 5. | 2 | Filtrate b | ag chang |
|--|--|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|------------|---|---|---------------------------------|
| 30 300 | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} OFF | Dialysate ^{mi/h} 1000 | | | | | Blood milit |
| | Heparin mith 2,0 | | | | | | | UF |
| * (1) | Balancing | Treatment time | | | | | | |
| 40 500 | 0.03 | 00:05 | | | | | | |
| | Pressure / alarm b | istory Next oper | ator action | | | | | |
| | | | A second second second | | | | in the second | |
| 0 | mmHg 400- | | | | | | - Access | |
| nvitig -100 | mei+g 400_ 300_ | | | | | | - Access Return - Pre-F | |
| Pre-F | meetig 400- 300- 200- 100- | L | | | | | - Access - Raturn - Pre-F - Titrate - TNP | |
| 100 re-F 45 750 | me#500_ 400_ 300_ 200_ 100_ 0 | f | | | | | Access Return Pre-F Fitrate TMP | |
| • •••••g -100 •••••F 45 750 | met#300- 400- 300- 100- 8- | Ł | | | | | Access Return — Pre-F — Filtrate — Th/P | Svilt |
| 100 Pre-F 45 750 | mentg200 300- 200- 100- 0- -100- -220- -300- | 12.45 | 13.00 | 1315 | 1122 | 0 | - Access - Raturn - Pre-F - Pritrate - TheP | S with pred |
| 100 Pre-F 45 750 | reetg200 300- 200- 100- 100- - 200- - 300- | 12.45 21.11. | 1200 | 1315 | | | Access Adum Pre-F Pre-F Parte The | Sorth pred fread inter |
| 0 vvrHg -100 Pre-F 45 750 vvHg -50 | Prestg200- 300- 300- 100- 0- - 300- - 300- - 300- - | 1245 21.11 | 1200 | 1315 | un an | • | - Access - Raturn - Pre-F - Thrate - Thr | Svrin pred inter cr |
| 100 rre-F 45 750 rrty -50 | 7000 000 300 300 100 0 - - - - - - - - - - - - - | 1245 22111 | 12.00 | ¹³¹⁵ | cer Cer | • | Access Pitun Pic-F Pitute Titute Titute | Syrif pred itter G |

4.2.11 End of treatment

4.2.11.1 Preparing the end of treatment



- A change of the treatment mode is shown in the status bar
- To undo this change, simply switch the substituate flow back on with the **I/O** button.

- Select End of treatment from the menu bar.
- Press the Confirm button to select blood reinfusion.

Press the **Continue** button to continue the treatment.

Press the **Confirm** button under **Without blood reinfusion** and **Blood pump Stop** in the screen that follows to go straight to the **Disconnect the patient!** screen (see chapter 4.2.11.5 on page 4-29).

4.2.11.2 End of treatment with blood reinfusion

- CVVHDF 120 90 60 30 0 mi Heparin End of trea iltrate bag change 📩 🗘 30 40 End of treatment with blood reinfusion If "Stop" is pressed, current treatment can no longer be continued Pre-F 45
- > Press the **Stop** button to stop the blood pump.

Balancing is switched off.

Press the Back button to return to the Prepare end of treatment screen.

4.2.11.3 Starting blood reinfusion

| CVV Po | HDF | Heparin | E | ind of treatment | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------|---|-------------------------|---------------------------|--------|-----------|-----------|-----------------------------|
| m 🗘 | | | | | | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| 0 mmHg -300 | | | | | | | | UF/BF 16% |
| m O 500 | | | | | | | | |
| nvity -100 Pre-F | - Co - Ch | nnect access eck return lin a t least 500 | Start | blood reinfusi | on | | | |
| 0 750 | 3610 | e al least out | | Blood reinfusion Start |) | | | |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS | PREPARATION | PATENT | TREATMENT PARAMETERS | TREATMENT | Meilus | TREATMENT | HISTORIES | STSTEM PARAMETERS |

Fresenius Medical Care multiFiltratePRO IFU-EN 10A-2019

- > Disconnect the access line from the patient and connect it to an NaCl solution bag.
- > Press the Start button to start blood reinfusion.

The blood flow is limited to 100 ml/min.

Chapter 4: Operation

CRRT treatments



Blood reinfusion ends automatically as soon as the optical detector detects the NaCl solution.

Press the **Pause** button to stop the blood reinfusion.

Press the **Exit** button to terminate blood reinfusion.

4.2.11.4 NaCl solution detected

| CVVHDF Post | Heparin | End of treatment | | | Blood reinfu 250 | tion volume ml |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------|--------|------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| m c 300 | Blood reinfusion vol. ml 250 | | | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| 0 | | | | | | UF/8F 16% |
| | | | | | | |
| 0 | Press "Conti | NaCl solution detec | ted | ution. | | |
| Pre-F 0 750 | | _ | | | | |
| 0 mmHg -50 3605 | Exit | Blood reinfusion | Contin | ue | | |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS PREPARATION | PATENT | ENT TREATMENT | MEHIUS | TREATMENT END | HISTORIES | SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

Press the Exit button to terminate blood reinfusion.

Press the **Continue** button to reinfuse a further 100 ml of NaCl solution. This can be repeated as needed.

4.2.11.5 Disconnecting the patient



- \succ Disconnect the patient.
- Press the Eject button to start ejecting the tubing system.

4.2.11.6 Dismantling the tubing system



Warning

Risk of cross-contamination as a result of contaminated consumables

There is a risk of spreading germs.

Consumables must be discarded after a treatment in compliance with the regulations for the disposal of potentially contaminated materials.



 \succ Dismantle the tubing system.

In the **HISTORIES** menu, you can view the treatment data and events.

Switch the device off with the Switch off button.

4.3 CRRT Ci-Ca treatments

General description of the Ci-Ca CVVHD and Ci-Ca postCVVHDF procedures with information on the differences between the individual therapies.

4.3.1 Switching on the device and starting the function test



There must be no load on any of the scales. There must be no tubing systems inserted in the Ci-Ca pumps.

Switch on the device with the On/Off button. The software version, date and time will

be displayed.

- TINNER TIME TAXABLE TA
- Press the Start button to start the function test.

4.3.2 Selecting the treatment option



 \succ Select the treatment option.

Press the **Continue** button to continue the previous treatment.

4.3.3 Continuing the previous treatment

| CVVH | IDF Hep | arin | Treatment options | Sector Contractor Sector | | 0 25 | 50 75 | 100 % |
|---------|-----------------|-------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|------------|---------|
| Pos | st <u>(</u> | (0 | Treament options | | | Func | tional tes | 1 |
| | | Previ | ious treatment will be cont | tinued | | | | |
| | Patient ID | | | Entir | re period | | | |
| | Case ID | 1234 | | Date 21.11.2018 | Start 12:24 | Duration 02:15 | | |
| | | | Balancing | 0.00 | T | | 1 | |
| | | | Substituate volume | 0.00 | 1 | | | |
| | | | Dialysate volume | 0.00 | | | | |
| | | | Substituate bolus volume | 0.00 | | | | |
| | | | Herer Foldine | | 1.1 | | | |
| | | | Heparin bolus volume | 0.0 | mi | | | |
| | | | Continuous heparin volume | 0.0 | ml | | | |
| | | | Citrate volume | 0.0 | mi | | | |
| | | | ou rounie | | | | | |
| | | | Treatment time | 00:00 | h:min | | | |
| | | | Balance data | | | | | |
| | | | Delete Polsi | | | 60 | | |
| | | _ | Netal | | | 00 | | |
| | | 1074 | | TREAT | 2020 | | T | 6.00 |
| OPTIONS | PREPARATION PAT | ERT PARA | IMETERS TREATMENT M | EN EN | | HISTORIES | PAR | AMETERS |

Press the Retain button to confirm the previous balance data.

Or

- Press the **Delete** button to reset the previous balance data to 0. The Patient ID and Case ID will not be deleted.
- Then press the OK button to confirm your previous selection ("Retain" or "Delete").

4.3.4 Start requirements

| CVVHDF | Heparin | Treatment options | a dentri i dentri i d | 0 25 50 | 75 100 1 |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|---|-----------------------|-----------|----------|
| Post | (1(0 | | | Functiona | l test 🏑 |
| | | Start requirements f Ci-Ca postCVVHD | or = | | |
| | Citrate solution Ca solution | (4 %) 136 mmol/i 97 mmol/i | 1000 ml 310 ml | | |
| | Dialysate Substituate | Ca-free Ca 1.50 mmol/l | | | |
| | Heparin syringe Filtrate bag | Fresenius Injectomat 1 filtrate bag | 50 mi 10 i | - | |
| | | Are the start requirements | | - | |
| | Back | fulfilled? | ок | | |
| and the second second | | 1 | | | Sec. 1 |

- Check the contents of the solution bags against the information shown on the screen.
- > Press **OK** to confirm that you have the correct solutions available.

Press the **Back** button to return to the treatment options screen.

4.3.5 Mounting the cassette



You can use the following buttons for mounting the cassette:

Press 💽 to go to the next step.

Press (2) to jump to the end of the setup instructions.

Press 🕥 to return to the previous step.

Press () to jump back to the beginning of the setup instructions.



- Hang up the cassette according to the instructions.
- \succ Fix the filter in the filter holder.
- Press Sto go to the next step.

4.3.5.1 Mounting the return system



Warning

Risk of air embolism due to loss of function of the air detector

Blood clots (coagula) in the tubing system, contaminations and/or moisture on the air bubble detector can impair the correct function of the air bubble detector.

- > Make sure that the air bubble detector is clean and dry.
- Do not use any ultrasound-conducting objects or media on the air bubble detector.



Warning

Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

If the tubing system is not inserted properly, this can prevent the air detection system from working.

When the tubing system is inserted into the air bubble detector/optical detector, the tube must lie along the full length of the tube holder.



Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

- > Insert the tubing system correctly into the line occlusion clamp.
- Do not remove the tubing system from the line occlusion clamp during treatment.

Chapter 4: Operation

CRRT Ci-Ca treatments



4.3.5.2 Mounting the access system





> Mount the return system according to the

 \succ Press \bigcirc to go to the next step.

instructions.



Note

Once the first positioner has been inserted, the cassette system can only be dismantled and changed by cancelling the preparation (Menus / Cancel preparation).

4.3.5.3 Mounting the filtrate system



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of damaged bags

Bags can burst when dropped.

Push filtrate bags as far back as possible onto the hooks of the lower scales.

| CVVHDF Post | Heparin <u>(1 (0</u> | Preparation | > Mount the filtrate system according to the |
|----------------|-------------------------|--|---|
| | | Fitrate system 9. Place positioner in filtrate pump until an audible signal is given and close pump door. 9. Place filtrate pressure dome onto pressure measurement unit (d) 9. Insert filtrate line in blood leak detector (yelow) 10. Connect filter connection (yelow) with filter 10. Connect filtrate long on scales 3 and 4 10. Connect filtrate long to the filtrate bag. To connect two filtrate bags, use Y adapter Filtrate bag monitoring: 10 litres (1 filtrate bag) O litres (1 filtrate bag) O litres (1 filtrate bag) Part 10 | instructions. Filtrate bag monitoring can be set in the System Parameters, from 5 I to 20 I. If set to more than 10 I, two 10-litre bags must be connected with a Y adapter. ➢ Press ♥ to go to the next step. |

4.3.5.4 Loading the solution bags



Note

When loading the solution bags onto the scales, make sure the connectors face inwards and to the rear.

CVVHDF



Warning

Risk of blood loss as a result of clotting

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance due to incorrect selection of dialysate

The use of calcium-containing dialysate for a Ci-Ca treatment can lead to blood clotting and/or hypercalcaemia.

Only use calcium-free dialysate for treatments with citrate anticoagulation.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance due to incorrect selection of substituate

The use of substituate with the wrong calcium level for a Ci-Ca treatment can lead to an electrolyte imbalance in the patient.

- Only use calcium-containing substituate for treatments with citrate anticoagulation.
- Check that the calcium solution used corresponds to the type selected in the Setup and shown on the screen.



CVVHD



Warning

Risk of blood loss as a result of clotting

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance due to incorrect selection of dialysate

The use of calcium-containing dialysate for a Ci-Ca treatment can lead to blood clotting and/or hypercalcaemia.

 Only use calcium-free dialysate for treatments with citrate anticoagulation.



 Load the solution bags onto the scales according to the instructions. Maximum load per scale is 12 kg. Observe the colour coding of the connectors.
 Press S to go to the next step.

4.3.5.5 Mounting the dialysate/substituate systems



Note

When inserting the heater bags, observe the correct colour coding.

CVVHDF



Note

For a Ci-Ca postCVVHDF treatment, the substituate line must always be connected to the postdilution port.



- Mount the dialysate/substituate systems according to the instructions.
- > Press () to go to the next step.

CVVHD



- Mount the dialysate system according to the instructions.
- > Press () to go to the next step.

4.3.5.6 Mounting the Ci-Ca system



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of incorrect Ci-Ca anticoagulation and changes in the patient's acid-base balance

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance

Check that the citrate and calcium solutions used correspond to the types selected in the Setup and shown on the screen.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of incorrect Ci-Ca anticoagulation and changes in the patient's acid-base balance

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance

- When mounting the Ci-Ca system, make sure the pump segments are correctly fixed and observe the correct colour coding of the Ci-Ca lines.
- Make sure you connect the lines of the citrate and calcium solutions correctly.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a reduction in body temperature

If the temperature of the citrate and calcium solutions is too low, this can lead to hypothermia in the patient.

- > The solutions must be at room temperature when used.
- > Either select a suitable storage temperature or heat the bags to the required temperature before use.



- Mount the Ci-Ca system according to the instructions.
- > Press () to go to the next step.



 Press the Start button to start inserting the Ci-Ca pump segments.



4.3.5.7 Inserting the heparin syringe

If heparinisation is needed in addition to the Ci-Ca anticoagulation, a heparin syringe can be inserted.

Note

Only use the syringe type selected in the Setup and shown on the screen.



Note

When inserting the heparin syringe, observe the following:

- The syringe wings must be positioned between the barrel holders and the bracket.
- The thumb rest of the syringe plunger must be positioned between the jaws of the spring clip on the stock.



Тір

The heparin syringe can be inserted any time after starting treatment by choosing **MENUS/Change syringe** (only if heparin pump is activated).



- Insert the heparin syringe according to the instructions.
- > Press Solution to go to the next step.

4.3.5.8 Cassette mounting completed



- > Insert complete cassette.
 - If the **OK** button cannot be selected (greyed out), check the mounted tubing system according to the instructions on the screen.
- > Press the **OK** button to confirm that the tubing system is fully mounted.

If heparin anticoagulation has been selected, the heparin line will be filled automatically after confirmation.

4.3.6 Filling and rinsing the cassette

4.3.6.1 Filling the Ci-Ca system



Press the Start button to start filling the Ci-Ca system.

The level in the Ci-Ca fill level detectors is checked.

If necessary, adjust the levels in the level detectors manually until they are between the markings.

4.3.6.2 Checking the Ci-Ca lines



- Visually check that the Ci-Ca lines are free of air.
- Press the OK button to confirm that you have checked the Ci-Ca lines.

If there is still air in the Ci-Ca lines:

- Press the Citrate button to continue filling the citrate line.
- Press the Ca button to continue filling the calcium line.

4.3.6.3 Filling the tubing system



Tip

The default rinse flow of 100 ml/min ensures the best possible deaeration of the filter and tubing system.



Press the Start button to start filling the tubing system.

Rinsing starts automatically as soon as the correct fill level in the bubble catcher is detected.

The rinse flow can be changed with the +/- rocker switch buttons.

4.3.6.4 Entering the Patient ID and Case ID

Requirements

The **Patient** menu opens automatically when filling is started, if **Jump to Patient menu** is activated. Otherwise, the **Treatment parameters** menu will open automatically when filling is started (see chapter 4.3.6.5 on page 4-44).



Check the Patient ID and Case ID shown. The fields will be empty if no data has yet been entered.

| Post | Heparin <u>Ci (d</u> | Patient | | | Fill tubing system |
|--|-------------------------|---------------------|-------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| m 🗘 | Patient ID | - 199 | Case | D | Rinse flo milmin 100 |
| ······································ | ### \ 1 2 3 | 4 5 6 7 6 | | | |
| 0 500 | | ┙┙┙║┙║╺ ┠╧┠╧┠╧┠╧ | | . 04 | |
| Pre-F | Post End | | ÷ | → Ins | |
| 738 | | | | 4 | |
| 0 mmitig -50 | | - | | • | |
| PREPARAT | TON PATIENT TREATS | TERS | MEHUS | TREATMENT END H | |

- To change or enter the Patient ID and Case ID, press the relevant field.
- Use the keyboard to enter the required Patient ID and Case ID.
- > Press the **OK** button to apply the displayed value.

Chapter 4: Operation

CRRT Ci-Ca treatments

| CVVHDF Post | Heparin <u>(1 (d</u> | Patient | | Fill tubing system |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| | Patient ID ##### | ji i | Case ID 1234 | Rinse flow milmin 100 + |
| | | | | |
| nning -100 | | | | |
| 0 750 | | | | |
| 277 TREATMENT OPTICIES | N PATENT TREATMENT PARAMETERS | IREATMENT | MERIUS | T HISTORIES SYSTEM PARAMETER |

Check the Patient ID and Case ID entered.

4.3.6.5 Entering treatment parameters



Note

Setting the treatment parameters (citrate dose, calcium dose, blood flow, and dialysate flow) is described in a separate chapter (see chapter 7.3.2 on page 7-15).

The correct ratio of the blood flow to the dialysate flow / substituate flow is important.



Note

Anticoagulation must be set as prescribed by the physician! The bolus function can be used if an initial heparin bolus needs to be administered.

The infusion of anticoagulation fluids is corrected automatically in the overall balance.

| CVVHI Post | DF Her | oarin (0 | Treatmen | t parameters | | 0 25 50 75 100 % Rinse |
|---------------|--------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| ش () | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate mi/h 2000 | Blood flow ml/min 100 | | Rinse flow milimin 100 |
| 0 | Heparin mith OFF | Heparin ^{ml} 1.0 | start/Stop Start/Stop | Ca dose mmol/l fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose | |
| nin 🛟 | Temperature ℃ 38.0 | Substitut mi 100 | start/Stop Start/Stop Start | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Pre-F | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| nmitig -50 | | _ | _ | | | |
| OPTIONS PR | EPARATION PAT | TENT TREATMEN | IT THE | ATMENT | MENUS TREATMENT END | HISTORIES SYSTEM |

- Check the preset treatment parameters. If necessary, adjust the treatment parameters.
- Temperature: Enter the temperature of the dialysate and the substituate (°C). The Temperature button can be used to switch the heater on and off.
- Calcium dose, Citrate dose:
 Enter the calcium and citrate dosage.

4.3.6.6 UF Rinse



Note

When using NaCl bags with only one connector, make sure there is enough NaCl solution.



If using an NaCl bag with two connectors:

- Remove return line from empty bag and connect to NaCl solution.
- Press the Start button to start the UF rinse.

If using an NaCl bag with one connector:

- Leave the existing connections as they are.
- Press the Start button to start the UF rinse.

The level in the bubble catcher will be set automatically when the UF rinse is finished.

4.3.7 Circulation



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of non-compliance with hygienic conditions

Keep preparation and circulation times before the treatment as short as possible.



Note

If the patient connection must be delayed, the extracorporeal circuit can be kept in circulation for a certain time after preparation.

To avoid stressing the tubing system for too long, the circulation time is also taken into account when monitoring the kit service life.



Note

In the Setup, circulation can be set to start automatically or to be confirmed by the user.

The factory setting is **Confirm**, since an automatic changeover into circulation mode is only possible if an NaCl solution bag with two connections is used.

• Stop before circulation



After the rinse is completed, the blood pump will stop.

An audible tone is emitted.

- Connect the access and return lines to the recirculation connector.
- > Press the **Start** button to start the circulation.

Or

Press the Preparation button to begin patient connection.

Automatic circulation



After the rinse is completed, the circulation will start automatically.

- \succ Prepare to connect the patient.
- Press the Preparation button to stop the blood pump.

4.3.8 Connecting the patient



Note

Pressing the **Start** button under Blood pump also starts the citrate anticoagulation. If the blood pump delivers 300 ml without any blood being detected, a message is output and all pumps are stopped. If the patient detection runs for more than 10 minutes without any blood being detected, the Ci-Ca pumps will stop. The calcium pump starts after the start of treatment and balancing.



The blood pump is stopped.

Press the Start button to start the blood pump.

The blood pump will continue operating until the optical detector has detected blood.

If necessary, administer a heparin bolus.

Press the **Continue** button to continue the circulation.

Chapter 4: Operation

CRRT Ci-Ca treatments

| CVVH Post | | arin 🙆 | Treatment | parameters | | Patient connection |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 11 | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate ^{mi/h} 2000 | | | Bloo mi 1 |
| - 300 | Heparin ^{mith} OFF | Heparin ^{ml} 1.0 | start/Stop Start/Stop | Ca dose mmol/l fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmol/1 blood 5.0 | |
| 0 500 | Temperature *C 38.0 | Substitue ml 100 | start/Stop Start/Stop Start | | | |
| 100 rre-F 0 750 | | If not al | Blood ready done, cor | detected | to patient! | |
| 0 mHg -50 | 2404 | | | atment (tart | | |
| HADD | PAL | TREATME | 11 | | TREATME | |

The optical detector has detected blood. The blood pump is stopped.

> Press the **Start** button to start the treatment.

4.3.9 Treatment



Warning

Risk of blood loss as a result of clotting

The post-filter calcium concentration must be checked 5 minutes after switching on the Ci-Ca anticoagulation and at regular intervals afterwards.

Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of incorrect Ci-Ca anticoagulation and changes in the patient's acid-base balance

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance

- \succ Observe the instructions for taking a sample in chapter 7.
- In the event of widely varying measurement values of the electrolytes and the acid-base balance, consult a physician.



Note

The use of a calcium-containing substituate for the Ci-Ca postCVVHDF treatment means that a calcium substitution is performed. If the concentrations have been entered correctly in the **User Setup** menu option, this is automatically taken into account in the calcium dose.

| Post | | <u>arin</u> | Treatment | 5 | 2 | Filtrate bag ch | ange |
|----------------|------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|------------|--------|-----------------|--|
| 30 300 | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate ^{mi/h} 2000 | | | В | milimin 100 |
| | Heparin mith OFF | Ca dose mmol/i fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmoW blood 5.0 | | | | UF/BF 17% |
| 40 sco | Balancing 0.30 | Treatment time h.min 02:09 | | | | | |
| 1000 | | | | | | | |
| ntig -100 | c | heck post- | filter Ca concentrat | ion in 5 m | inutes | • | Ca ag change |
| | c | heck post- | filter Ca concentrat | ion in 5 m | inutes | 2 | Ca ag change Chrate ag change |
| re-F 45 750 | 2554 | heck post- | filter Ca concentrat | ion in 5 m | inutes | 0 | Ca ag change Gitrate ag change readment terrupted Care |

After the treatment has been started, a message is displayed prompting the operator to check the post-filter calcium concentration after 5 minutes.

4.3.9.1 Treatment screen

| Post | | | Treatme | nt | 5 | Filtrate | bag change |
|--------|------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|-------|-------|---------------------------------------|---|
| 30 300 | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate ^{mi/h} 2000 | | | | Blood fil milimin 100 |
| 0 | Heparin mith OFF | Ca dose mmol/l fibrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmoVi blood 5.0 | | | | UF/BF 17% |
| 40 500 | Balancing 1 0.30 | Treatment time h.min 02:09 | | | | | _ |
| | Pressure / alarm h | Istory Next ope | rator action | | | - 47993 | |
| re-F | 300- 200- 100- | Į | | | | - Return Pre-F - Fibrate TMP | C.a bag chan |
| 45 | -100- | | | | | | Citrate |
| 40 /30 | -200 | 12.30 | 12.45 | 13:00 | 1315 | | bag chan |
| | .300- | 12.30 21.11. | 1245 | 1300 | () () | | bag chan Treatmin interrupt Care |

The treatment screen is displayed throughout the entire treatment.

The information area shows important treatment data:

Pressure / alarm history Next operator action

4.3.9.2 Menus



The following menu options can be selected:

 Rocker switch buttons for setting the level in the bubble catcher:

For raising or lowering the level in the bubble catcher.

- Cancel preparation: For dismantling (user) / ejecting (device) the tubing system during preparation.
- Treatment interrupted:
- For pausing treatment.
- Switch off balancing / Switch balancing on:
- For switching balancing off and back on. – Change syringe:
 - For changing the heparin syringe.
- Care:
 - For starting Care mode.
 - Bag change: For changing the dialysate bag and emptying the filtrate bag.
- Ci-Ca information:
 For viewing additional information on Ci-Ca anticoagulation.
- Ca bag change:
 - For changing the calcium bag.
- Citrate bag change: For changing the citrate bag.
- Switch off/on Ci-Ca anticoagulation: For switching citrate anticoagulation off and back on.

Detailed description of menu options shown (see chapter 4.6 on page 4-83).

4.3.9.3 Histories

| CVVHDF | Heparin | Histories | 5 | 12 | 10 90 60 30 0 min |
|----------------------|---|---------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 USL | Contraction of the Owner of the O | | | | Filtrate bag change |
| | Balance data | Balance history Events | 1 | | Blood flow mlimin |
| | | Current treatment | Entir | e period | 100 |
| | | Content in califierit | Date | Start Durati | on + |
| | | Start: CI-Ca postCVVHDF | 21.11.2018 | 12:35 00:0 | UF/BF 17% |
| | | Balancing | 0.30 | 1 | |
| ÷ (1) | | Substituate volume | 0.00 | 100 | |
| 40 50 | | Dialysate volume | 0.00 | 1 B | |
| | | Substituate bolus volume | 0.00 | 1 | a state to a |
| | | Net UF volume | 0.00 | 1 | |
| | | Heparin bolus volume | 0.0 | mi | |
| | | Continuous heparin volume | 0.0 | mi | |
| mwHg -100 | | Citrate volume | 0.0 | mi | |
| Pre-F | | Ca volume | 0.0 | mi | |
| 45 750 | | Treatment time | 02:09 | h:min | bag change |
| | | Filter life | 00:00 | h:min | Citrate bag change |
| | | | _ | | Treatment |
| | | | Reset bal | ance data | |
| antig -50 | | | - | | Care |
| 239 | and the second second | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | and the second second | the second |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS | PATIENT | TREATMENT PARAMETERS TREATMENT | MERUS T | REATMENT END HE | STORIES STSTEM PARAMETERS |

The following tabs can be selected:

- Balance data
- Balance history
- Events

(see chapter 4.7 on page 4-105)

Pressing the **Reset balance data** button will reset all the cumulative volume information recorded so far to "zero". The treatment time and the filter life will not be reset.

4.3.9.4 System Parameters



In the **System Parameters** screen, only the blue (activated) buttons can be used to open the appropriate options (see chapter 4.8 on page 4-110).

To activate any grey buttons, you will need a ServiceCard or UserCard.

4.3.10 End of treatment

4.3.10.1 Preparing the end of treatment



- Select End of treatment from the menu bar.
- Press the Confirm button to select blood reinfusion.

Press the **Continue** button to continue the treatment.

Press the **Confirm** button under **Without blood reinfusion** and **Blood pump Stop** in the screen that follows to go straight to the **Disconnect the patient!** screen (see chapter 4.3.10.5 on page 4-54).

4.3.10.2 End of treatment with blood reinfusion



Press the Stop button to stop the blood pump.

Balancing is switched off.

Press the **Back** button to return to the Prepare end of treatment screen.

4.3.10.3 Starting blood reinfusion

| CVVHDF Post | Heparin <u>Ci (0</u> | End of treatment | | | | |
|------------------------------|---|---------------------------|--------|-----------|-----------|-----------------------------|
| * \$ | | | | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| 0 mmig -300 | | | | | | UF/BF 17% |
| | | | | | | |
| nning -100 Pre-F 0 750 | Connect access line to Check return line conr Use at least 500 ml Nai | Start blood reinfus | sion | | | |
| | | Blood reinfusion | | | | |
| 0 nvzHy -50 3610 | | Start | | | | |
| TREATMENT PREPARATIO | N PATIENT TREA | IMENI METERS TREATMENT | MERIUS | TREATMENT | HISTORIES | STSTEM |

- Disconnect the access line from the patient and connect it to an NaCl solution bag.
- Press the Start button to start blood reinfusion.

The blood flow is limited to 100 ml/min. Ci-Ca anticoagulation is stopped.



Blood reinfusion ends automatically as soon as the optical detector detects the NaCl solution.

Press the **Pause** button to stop the blood reinfusion.

Press the **Exit** button to terminate blood reinfusion.

4.3.10.4 NaCl solution detected



Press the Exit button to terminate blood reinfusion.

Press the **Continue** button to reinfuse a further 100 ml of NaCl solution. This can be repeated as needed.

4.3.10.5 Disconnecting the patient



Warning

Risk of blood loss as a result of connection sites not closed correctly

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance

If pump segments of the Ci-Ca system are not inserted, there is a risk of blood loss or hypercalcaemia.

It is forbidden to remove the Ci-Ca tubing system manually before the patient is disconnected.



- \succ Disconnect the patient.
- Press the Eject button to start ejecting the tubing system.

4.3.10.6 Dismantling the tubing system



Warning

Risk of cross-contamination as a result of contaminated consumables

There is a risk of spreading germs.

Consumables must be discarded after a treatment in compliance with the regulations for the disposal of potentially contaminated materials.



Note

Use the positioner to remove the tubing from the stators of the Ci-Ca pumps in each case. The pump rotor will then begin to eject the pump segments. You can help the ejection of the pump segments by lightly pulling on the positioners.



 \succ Dismantle the tubing system.

In the **HISTORIES** menu, you can view the treatment data and events.

Switch the device off with the Switch off button.

TPE treatments

4.4 TPE treatments

4.4.1 Switching on the device and starting the function test



T

There must be no load on any of the scales.

Switch on the device with the On/Off button.

The software version, date and time will be displayed.

Press the Start button to start the function test.

TPE treatments

4.4.2 Selecting the treatment option



- \succ Select the **TPE** tab.
- Select the treatment option **TPE**.

4.4.3 Start requirements

| and the second | TPE | Heparin | Treatment options | | 0 | 25 | 50 75 | 100 % |
|----------------------|----------|---------------------------------|--|------------------------|-----|--------|-------------|------------------|
| | | Treatment options | | | | | tional test | 1 |
| | | | Start requirements f TPE | or | | | 7 | |
| | | Heparin syringe Filtrate bag | Fresenius Injectomat 1 filtrate bag | 50 mi 10 l | _ | | | |
| | | | Are the start requirements fulfilled? | | | | | |
| | | Back |) | ок | | | | |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS | PRIPARAT | IN PATIENT PARAM | MENT TREATMENT | MURPS TREATMENT EID | HIS | IORIES | S' PAR | ISTEM AMETERS |

- Check heparin syringe type, number of filtrate bags and filtrate bag size against the information on the screen.
- > Press the **OK** button to confirm the consumables used.

Press the **Back** button to return to the treatment options screen.

TPE treatments

4.4.4 Mounting the cassette



You can use the following buttons for mounting the cassette:

Press 💽 to go to the next step.

Press 🕑 to jump to the end of the setup instructions.

Press 🕥 to return to the previous step.

Press () to jump back to the beginning of the setup instructions.

- Hang up the cassette according to the instructions.
- \succ Fix the plasma filter in the filter holder.
- \succ Press \bigcirc to go to the next step.



4.4.4.1 Mounting the return system



Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

Blood clots (coagula) in the tubing system, contaminations and/or moisture on the air bubble detector can impair the correct function of the air bubble detector.

- > The air bubble detector must be clean and dry.
- > Do not use any ultrasound-conducting objects or media.


Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

If the tubing system is not inserted properly, this can prevent the air detection system from working.

When the tubing system is inserted into the air bubble detector/optical detector, the tube must lie along the full length of the tube holder.



Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

- > Insert the tubing system correctly into the line occlusion clamp.
- Do not remove the tubing system from the line occlusion clamp during treatment.



- Mount the return system according to the instructions.
- > Press () to go to the next step.

4.4.4.2 Mounting the access system



Mount the access system according to the instructions.

Check that the correct cassette has been mounted for the selected treatment option.

> Press () to go to the next step.



Note

Once the first positioner has been inserted, the cassette system can only be dismantled and changed by cancelling the preparation (**Menus** / **Cancel preparation**).

4.4.4.3 Mounting the filtrate system



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of damaged bags

Bags can burst when dropped.

Push filtrate bags as far back as possible onto the hooks of the lower scales.



Mount the filtrate system according to the instructions.

Filtrate bag monitoring can be set in the System Parameters, from 5 L to 20 L. If set to more than 10 L, two 10-litre bags must be connected with a Y adapter.



4.4.4.4 Loading the solution bags



Note

When loading the solution bags onto the scales, make sure the connectors face inwards and to the rear.



- Load the NaCl solution onto scale 1 according to the instructions.
- If necessary, place the plasma bag holder on scale 2.

Maximum load per scale is 12 kg

> Press 💽 to go to the next step.

4.4.4.5 Mounting the plasma system



Note

When inserting the heater bags, observe the correct colour coding.

TPE treatments



- Mount the plasma system according to the instructions.
- \succ Press \bigcirc to go to the next step.

4.4.4.6 Inserting the heparin syringe



Note

Only use the syringe type selected in the Setup and shown on the screen.



Note

When inserting the heparin syringe, observe the following:

- The syringe wings must be positioned between the barrel holders and the bracket.
- The thumb rest of the syringe plunger must be positioned between the jaws of the spring clip on the stock.



Тір

If a treatment has been started without heparin, a heparin syringe can be inserted any time by choosing **Menus / Change syringe** (only if heparin pump is activated).

> Insert the heparin syringe according to the

> Press () to go to the next step.

instructions.



4.4.4.7 Cassette mounting completed

| TPE | Heparin | Preparation |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| | | Insert complete cassette Return system Access system Fitrate system Plasma system Hepann kne NaCI solution |
| | | Close all clamps not in use! Insert tubing system without kinks and press "OK" to confirm! |
| | | |
| OPTIONS PREPARATE | ON PATIENT TREATMENT PARAMETE | RS TREATMENT MENUS THUATMANN INSTORIES SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

Insert complete cassette. If the OK button cannot be selected

(greyed out), check the mounted tubing system according to the instructions on the screen.

Press the OK button to confirm that the tubing system is fully mounted.

If heparin anticoagulation has been selected, the heparin line will be filled automatically after confirmation.

4.4.5 Filling and rinsing the cassette

4.4.5.1 Filling the tubing system



Tip

The default rinse flow of 100 ml/min ensures the best possible deaeration of the plasma filter and tubing system.

TPE treatments



Press the Start button to start filling the tubing system.

Rinsing starts automatically as soon as the correct fill level in the bubble catcher is detected.

The rinse flow can be changed with the +/- rocker switch buttons.

4.4.5.2 Entering the Patient ID and Case ID

Requirements

The **Patient** menu opens automatically when filling is started, if **Jump to Patient menu** is activated. Otherwise, the **Treatment parameters** menu will open automatically when filling is started (see chapter 4.3.6.5 on page 4-44)

| TPE | Heparin | | Patient | | | Fill tubin | g system |
|----------------|------------|-------------------------|-----------|--------|-----------|------------|------------------------------|
| | Pat | ient ID | | Case I | D | | Rinse flow milimin 100 |
| | | | | | | | |
| 0 500 1 100 | | | | | | | |
| Pre-F 0 750 | | | | | | | |
| 0 nvvHg -50 | | | | | | | |
| | ON PATIENT | TREATMENT PARAMETERS | TREATMENT | MEIIUS | TREATMENT | HISTORIES | STSTEM PARAMETERS |

Check the Patient ID/Case ID shown. The fields will be empty if no data has yet been entered.

- To change or enter the Patient ID/Case ID, press the relevant field.
- Use the keyboard to enter the required Patient ID/Case ID.
- Press the OK button to apply the displayed value.

| Post | JF | <u>(i (a</u> | _ | Patient | | | Fill tubin | g system |
|-------------------------|-----------|--------------|-------------------------|-----------|-------|-----------|------------|----------------------|
| m () | | Pat | ient ID | 1 | Casel | D | | Rinse flow |
| 0 300 | | # | ### | | 1234 | 4 | | 100 |
| 0 | | | | | | | | |
| -300 | | | | | | | | |
| m () | | | | | | | | |
| 0 500 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| 0 mmHg -100 | | | | | | | | |
| Pre-F | | | | | | | | |
| 0 750 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | | | | | | | |
| 177 | | | | | | | | |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS PR | EPARATION | РАТЕНТ | TREATMENT PARAMETERS | TREATMENT | MEHUS | TREATMENT | HISTORIES | SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

> Check the Patient ID / Case ID entered.

4.4.5.3 Entering treatment parameters

010/1105



Note

The bolus function can be used if an initial heparin bolus needs to be administered.

The infusion of anticoagulation fluids is corrected automatically in the overall balance.

TPE treatments

| TPE | Hepa | rin | Treatment | parameters | | 0 25 | 50 75 100 % |
|----------------|--------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| m 🗘 | TMP 0 270 | Heparin ^{mi/h} 2.0 | Heparin ^{mi} 1.0 | bolus Start/Stop Start | Plasma rate | Blood flow ml/min 100 | Rinse flow milmin 100 |
| 0 | 0 | Heater | Target volume ml | | | | ÷ |
| m (| | | | | | | |
| 0 mmHg -100 | | | | | | | |
| Pre-F 0 750 | | | | | | | |
| 0.50 | | | | | | | |
| miny | | | | | | | |

- Check the preset treatment parameters. If necessary, adjust the treatment parameters.
- Temperature: Switch on the substituate or plasma heater.



Warning

Risk for the patient due to heat loss via the extracorporeal blood circuit if the temperature of the plasma replacement solution is too low

Haemodynamic instability due to the reduction in core body temperature

- Preheat plasma replacement solution to at least 20 °C before treatment.
- \succ Conduct treatment at a room temperature of at least 20 °C.
- > Switch on heater.
- > Avoid drafts during treatment.
- > Regular monitoring of patient temperature.
- If necessary, take measures to maintain patient temperature, such as use of electric blankets.



Note

In order to avoid damage to the proteins in donor plasma, the heating power in TPE treatments has been reduced. The temperature at the insertion site depends among other things on the ambient temperature (see chapter 12 on page 12-1).

4.4.5.4 UF Rinse



Note

When using NaCl bags with only one connector, make sure there is enough NaCl solution.

If using an NaCl bag with two connectors:

> Remove return line from empty bag and

Press the Start button to start the UF

> Press the Start button to start the UF

The level in the bubble catcher will be set automatically when the UF rinse is finished.

If using an NaCl bag with one connector: > Leave the existing connections as they

connect to NaCl solution.

rinse.

are.

rinse.

TPE treatments



4.4.6 Circulation



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of non-compliance with hygienic conditions

There is a risk of spreading germs.

- Only insert single-use items and consumables immediately before beginning treatment.
- Keep preparation and circulation times before the treatment as short as possible.



Note

If the patient connection must be delayed, the extracorporeal circuit can be kept in circulation for a certain time after preparation.

To avoid stressing the tubing system for too long, the circulation time is also taken into account when monitoring the kit service life.



Note

In the Setup, circulation can be set to start automatically (without recirculation connector) or to be confirmed by the user (with recirculation connector).

The factory setting is **Confirm**, since an automatic changeover into circulation mode is only possible if an NaCl solution bag with two connections is used.

TPE treatments

• Stop before circulation

Hepari TPE **Treatment parameters** TMP Heparin bolus Blood flow ¢) Heparin Plasma rate Rinse flo nin 0 0 10 100 2.0 1.0 100 Start Target volume Heater ON OFF m () 0 UF rinse completed Use recirculation connector for circulation if necessary Pre-F 0 Fill plasma system

After the rinse is completed, the blood pump will stop. An audible tone is emitted.

- > Connect the access and return lines to the recirculation connector.
- Press the Start button to start the circulation.

Or

Press the **Preparation** button to prepare the filling of the plasma system.

Automatic circulation

| TPE | Hej | parin | Treatment | parameters | | | Circulation |
|----------------|--------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| m \$ | TMP 0 270 | Heparin ^{ml/h} 2.0 | Heparir ^{mi} 1.0 | start/Stop Start | Plasma rate % 10 | Blood flow mi/min 100 | Rinse flor milimin 100 |
| 0 | 0 | Heater | Target volume ml OFF | | | | |
| m () 500 | | | | | | | |
| nvetig -100 | | | Circulatio | n is active | • | | 1 |
| Pre-F 0 750 | | | | | | | |
| annity -50 | 2407 | | Fill plasm Prepa | na system Iration | | | |
| | | THEAT | ATAIT | | | | |

After the rinse is completed, the circulation will start automatically.

Press the Preparation button to prepare the filling of the plasma system. The blood pump is stopped.

4.4.7 Filling the plasma system



Note

After pressing the **Fill plasma Start** button, it is not possible to return to circulation. Plasma filling is completed after the blood pump stops, and this is followed by the **Patient connection**.



4.4.8 Patient connection

| TPE | Hep | arin | Treatment | narameters | | 0 | 25 50 75 100 % |
|-----------------------------|---|--|---|---|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1116 | | | Treatment | | | | Fill plasma 🗸 |
| m c x | TMP 0 270 | Heparin ^{ml/h} 2.0 | Heparin ^{ml} 1.0 | bolus Start/Stop Start | Plasma rate % 10 | Blood flow mi/min 100 | Rinse flow milimin 100 |
| 0 mmHg -300 | entry 0 | Heater | Target volume mi OFF | | | | |
| nin 🗘 | | | | | | | |
| 0 1000 Pre-F 0 750 | - Connect a - Open clar - Check tre | access line to p nps (red) on ac atment parame | Patient co patient, or connect cess line and clarr ters and patient do | access and re p (blue) on ret ata | turn lines at the s turn line | ame time | |
| 0 gravn | 2411 | | Blood | pump art | | | |
| IRPATMENT OPTIONS | PARATION PATI | EIIT TREATM | ENT TREAT | MENT | MERUS | ATMENT END HISTO | DRIES SYSTEM PARAMETER |

The blood pump is stopped.

- Close the clamp (white) on the line to the NaCl bag on scale 1.
- Load the plasma bag onto scale 2, or hang it on the plasma bag holder, and connect the plasma line.
- Enter the volume of the opened plasma bags (see second screen).
- Press the Start button to start filling the plasma system.

The substituate pump delivers 270 ml

Press the **Continue** button to continue the circulation.

The blood pump is stopped.

Press the Start button to start the blood pump.

The blood pump will continue operating until the optical detector has detected blood.

If necessary, administer a heparin bolus.

TPE treatments

| TPE | Нер | arin | Treatment | parameters | | | Patient c | onnection |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|--------|-----------|-----------|----------------------------|
| m | TMP 0 270 | Heparin ^{mith} 2.0 | Heparin mi 1.0 | start/Stop Start | | | | Blood flo milmin 100 |
| | 0 | Heater | Target volume ml | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | Plasma ra |
| - 100 Pre-F 0 750 | - Connect r - Open clar | return line to p np (blue) of rei | Blood o atient turn line | letected | | | | ml/min 10 |
| 0 mmHg -50 2 | 413 | | Prepare pla | smafiltration art | | | | |
| PATIALINI OPTIONS PREPAR | PATION PATI | EIIT TREAT | AENIT TREAT | IMENT | MEHIUS | TREATMENT | HISTOPJES | STSTEN |

The optical detector has detected blood. The blood pump is stopped.

Press the Start button to start preparing plasmafiltration.

4.4.9 Preparing plasmafiltration

| TPE | Hepa | rin | Tr | eatment | 5 | - | 120 90 Plasma b | ag change |
|----------------------------|---|---|----------------------------------|--|---|------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| m ♀ 30 ∞ | TMP 0 270 Heparin mi/h 2.0 | | Cur Remaining vo mi 200 | rrent bag ol. Rem. time <u>20:00</u> | | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| | 0 mestig -60 | Exchang | ged plasma ml O | Target volume ml 3500 | Remaining treat. time h.mn 05:50 | | | |
| 40 500 | | | | | | | | Plasma rate |
| nvetig -100 | 14-4-200 | F | Preparing (| plasmafiltrati | on | | | ml/min 10 |
| Pre-F 45 750 | - Op to 300 - Remaining - Plasma pu | mi blood volur i volume: 0 ml mp control is | automatic | iter conditioning | | | | Switch off balancing Bag change |
| 0 | 1522 | | | | | | | Treatment interrupted |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS PREPA | RATION | IT TREATM | IBAT TERS T | REATMENT | Meilus | TREATMENT END | HISTORIES | SYSTEM |

Filter conditioning with blood The substituate pump and filtrate pump are stopped.

The transition to filter conditioning with plasma takes place automatically.

| TPE | нера | nn | Tre | atment | 5 | 2 | Plasma b | ag change |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|---|------------------|-----------|---|
| * () 30 ** | TMP 0 270 | Heparin ^{mi/h} 2.0 | Curr Remaining vo mi 200 | ent bag I. Rem. time min.sec 20:00 | | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| 0 mmHg -300 | 0 mestig -60 | Exchang 3 | ed plasma ml 00 | Target volume ml 3500 | Remainir treat.tin h.min 05:20 | 1g 1e 0 | | |
| 40 500 | | | | | | | | Plasma rate |
| nmity -100 | - Delivery of - Remaining | 1300 mi plasma volume: 0 mi | Prepare | plasma filter | • | | | ml/min 10 Switch off balansing |
| 45 750 | - riasma rau | e increases to | target rate in in | crements | | | | Bag change Treatment interrupted |
| 0 -50 | 1532 | - | | | | | | Plasma cakulat |
| CATMENT PREPA | RATION PATE | IT TREATM | ENT TERS | EATMENT | MEIIUS | TREATMENT END | HISTORIES | SYSTEM PARAMETER |

Filter conditioning with plasma The substituate pump is controlled automatically until the target rate is

reached.

4.4.10 Treatment

4.4.10.1 Treatment screen



The treatment screen is displayed throughout the entire treatment.

The information area shows important treatment data:

Pressure / alarm history Next operator action

4.4.10.2 Menus



The following menu options can be selected:

 Rocker switch buttons for setting the level in the bubble catcher:

For raising or lowering the level in the bubble catcher.

- Cancel preparation: For dismantling (user) / ejecting (device) the tubing system during preparation.
- Treatment interrupted:
- For pausing treatment.
- Switch off balancing / Switch balancing on:
- For switching balancing off and back on. – Change syringe:
- For changing the heparin syringe.
- Bag change: For changing the plasma bag.
- Plasma calculator: For calculating the plasma to be exchanged.
- Switch blood leak monitoring off/on: For switching blood leak monitoring off and back on.

Detailed description of menu options shown (see chapter 4.6 on page 4-83).

4.4.10.3 Histories



The following tabs can be selected:

- Balance data
- Balance history
- Events

(see chapter 4.7 on page 4-105)

4.4.10.4 System Parameters



In the **System Parameters** screen, only the blue (activated) buttons can be used to open the appropriate options (see chapter 4.8 on page 4-110).

To activate any grey buttons, you will need a ServiceCard or UserCard.

4.4.10.5 Performing a plasma bag change

| TPE | Нера | ırin | Tr | eatment | 5 | - | 120 90 6 Plasma ba | 30 0 min |
|----------------------|---|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|-----------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| * \$ 30 ** | TMP 0 270 | Heparin ^{mith} 2.0 | Cur Remaining v mi 20 | ol. Rem. time | | | | Blood flow m&min 100 |
| menting -300 | 0 100 - 100 | Exchan | ged plasma ml 000 | Target volume ml 3500 | Remaining treat.time h.min 04:10 | | | İ |
| 40 500 | | | | | | | | Plasma rate % 10 |
| D mysety -100 | Pressore / alarm his Less Greater | Hext op 3min 15min | Plasma bag c Filtrate bag c | :hange hange | | | | ml/min 10 |
| Pre-F | | • | Heparin syrin | ige change | | | | Switchforr balancing |
| 45 750 | | | | | | | | Bag change |
| | | | | | | | | Treatment interrupted |
| mm84g -50 | | | | | - | | | Planma calculator |
| TREATMENT PREP | PARATION | NT TREATS | TERS T | REATMENT | MEHUS | TREATMENT | HISTORIES | SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

The **Next operator action** tab indicates if the plasma bag needs to be changed in under 3 minutes.

Select the **Bag change** menu option (see chapter 4.6.8 on page 4-96).

Or

Wait until the Plasma bag empty message appears.

TPE treatments



120 90 60 30 0 mit Hepari TPE Bag change a bag change ii () Blood flow Plasma 30 Scale 2 300 0g/max 12 kg i () 40 ag connection (white) and co mmHg -10 Pre-F 45 If "Confirm" is pressed, the entered plasma volume is saved If "Cancel" is pressed, the original volumes are retained

A message appears on the screen when the plasma bag is empty.

Press the Start button to open the bag change menu.

Change bags according to the instructions.
 Balancing is switched off.

Make sure you load the solutions onto the correct scales.

- Enter the new volume of the opened plasma bags.
- Press the Confirm button to return to the treatment screen.

Balancing is started automatically.

Press the **Cancel** button to cancel the plasma bag change.

The entered plasma volume is not applied.

4.4.10.6 Performing filtrate bag change (TPE)



A filtrate bag change is displayed.

 Change bags according to the instructions.

Balancing is switched off.

- Wait until the Filtrate bag is full message appears.
- Press the Confirm button to return to the treatment screen.

Treatment is continued with the current weight of each changed bag. Balancing is started automatically.

4.4.11 End of treatment

4.4.11.1 Preparing the end of treatment



- Select End of treatment from the menu bar.
- Select Exchange to end the treatment with a residual plasma exchange.

Press the **Continue** button to continue the treatment.

Press the **Discard** button to switch directly to the **Treatment ended without exchanging residual plasma** menu (see chapter 4.4.11.3 on page 4-77).



Note

Residual plasma exchange is disabled under certain conditions.

4.4.11.2 Exchanging residual plasma



Press the Stop button to stop the substituate pump. Balancing is switched off.

Press the **Back** button to return to the **Prepare end of treatment** screen.



- Load and connect the NaCl bag on scale 1.
- Close the clamp (white) on the plasma line to the plasma bag on scale 2.
- Press the Start button to start the residual plasma exchange.

| TPE | Нер | arin | End o | f treatment | 5 | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|----------|-----------|---|
| * € 30 ∞ | TMP 0 270 | Heparin ^{mi/h} 2.0 | Hep ^{ml} 1.0 | arin bolus Start/Stop Start | Heater | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| | 0 meetg -60 | Exchange 350 | d plasma | Target volume ^{ml} 3500 | Remaining treat. time htmin 00:00 | | | ÷ |
| 40 500 | | | | | | | | Plasma rat |
| norty -100 Pre-F | | Re | sidual pl | asma exchan ng volume: 0 ml | ige | | | milimin 10 Switcht off balancing |
| 40 750 mm+g -50 | 3130 | | Ē | xchange Exit | | | | |
| PATMENT PREI | PARATION | ENT PARAMETE | i i | REATMENT | MEILUS | REATMENT | HISTORIES | SYSTEM |

The remaining volume is displayed. The substituate pump delivers 270 ml

Press the **Exit** button to terminate the residual plasma exchange.

4.4.11.3 Selecting blood reinfusion

| TPE | Hepi | arin | End o | of treatment | 5 | , | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|-------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|
| 10 30 300 | TMP 0 270 | Heparin ^{mi/h} 2.0 | Hep ^{ml} 1.0 | arin bolus Start/Stop Start | Heater ON | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| | | Exchange 350 | d plasma)0 | Target volume ml 3500 | Remaining treat, time htmin 00:00 | | | Ż |
| 40 500 | | | | | | | | Plasma rate |
| 0 mmHg -100 | | Pi | repare bl | ood reinfusio | on d. | | | ml/min 10 |
| Pre-F 45 750 | | | | - | | | | Switch off balancing |
| 0 nntig -50 | Without bloo Conf | d reinfusion | | | Blo | od reinfusio Confirm | | |
| D TREATMENT OPTIONS | REPARATION | HIT PARAMETES | is i | BEATMENT | MERIUS | TREATMENT END | HISTORIES | SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

Press the Confirm button to select blood reinfusion.

Press the **Confirm** button under **Without blood reinfusion** and **Blood pump Stop** in the screen that follows to go straight to the **Disconnect the patient!** screen (see chapter 4.4.11.5 on page 4-80).

TPE treatments

End of treatment without exchanging residual plasma



 Press the Confirm button to select blood reinfusion.

Press the **Back** button to return to the Prepare end of treatment screen.

Press the **Confirm** button under **Without blood reinfusion** and **Blood pump Stop** in the screen that follows to go straight to the **Disconnect the patient!** screen (see chapter 4.4.11.5 on page 4-80).

4.4.11.4 End of treatment with blood reinfusion

| TP | E Her | parin | End o | End of treatment | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|---|------------------|-----------|------------------------------|
| 30 xx | TMP 0 270 | Heparin ^{mi/h} 2.0 | Heparin bolus ^{ml Start/Stop} 1.0 Start | | Heater ON | | | Blood flow milimin 100 |
| | 0 | Exchanged ml 350 | i plasma 0 | Target volume ml 3500 | Remainin treat tim h.min 00:00 | ig ie | | Ì |
| 40 500 | _ | | | | | | | Plasma rate |
| Pre-F | | End of tr | eatment | with blood re | einfusio gerbecon | on tinued. | | ml/min 10 Switchron |
| 45 750 0 | 9002 | Back | | C | Blood pu Stop | mp | | balancing |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS | PREPARATION | HENT TREATMENT PARAMETER | s _ 1 | REATMENT | MEHUS | TREATMENT END | HISTORIES | SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

Press the Stop button to stop the blood pump.

Press the **Back** button to return to the blood reinfusion selection screen.

- Heparin TPE End of treatment 0 ml Blood reinfusion vol. TMP m ¢ Blood flor 0 0 100 0 40 500 Start blood reinfusion - Connect access line to NaCl solut - Check return line connection to pa - Use at least 500 ml NaCl solution Pre-F 0 od reinfu
- Disconnect the access line from the patient and connect it to an NaCl solution bag.
- Press the Start button to start the reinfusion.

The blood flow is limited to 100 ml/min.



Blood reinfusion ends automatically as soon as the optical detector detects the NaCl solution.

Press the **Pause** button to stop the blood reinfusion.

Press the **Exit** button to terminate blood reinfusion.

TPE treatments



4.4.11.5 Disconnecting the patient

| TPE | Heparin | Enc | l of treatment | | | | |
|-------------------|---------|-------|-------------------|--------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| -300 | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | Fad | | • | | | |
| avvitig -100 | | Ena | or treatmen | п | | | |
| Pre-F | | Disco | nnect the patient | 1 | | | |
| 0 750 | | | | | | | |
| | | _ | ubing system | | | | |
| 0 nvrHg -50 34 | 09 | _ | Eject | | | | |
| TREATIANT DREPAR | | | TREATMENT | Mellus | TREATMENT | HISTORIES | SYSTEM |
| options | | | Concerned to | | | - | PARAMETERS |

- Press the Exit button to terminate blood reinfusion.
- Press the **Continue** button to reinfuse a further 100 ml of NaCl solution. This can be repeated as needed.

- \succ Disconnect the patient.
- Press the Eject button to start ejecting the tubing system.

4.4.11.6 Dismantling the tubing system



Warning

Risk of cross-contamination as a result of contaminated consumables

There is a risk of spreading germs.

Consumables must be discarded after a treatment in compliance with the regulations for the disposal of potentially contaminated materials.



 \succ Dismantle the tubing system.

In the **HISTORIES** menu, you can view the treatment data and events.

Switch the device off with the Switch off button.

Treatment displays

4.5 Treatment displays

4.5.1 Pressure / alarm history

| Post | | | Treatme | ent | 2 | Filtrate bag | chan |
|---|--|---|-------------------------------------|-------|--------|--|--------------------------------------|
| 30 300 | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate ^{mVh} 2000 | | | | Blog |
| | Heparin mith OFF | Ca dose mmol/l fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmoVi blood 5.0 | | | | U |
| | Balancing 0.30 | Treatment time h.min 02:09 | | | | | |
| 100 | Statement of the local division of the local | | | | | | |
| | Pressure / atarm h | istory Next ope | rator action | | | | |
| -100 | Pressure / alarm b metg 400_ 300_ 200_ 100_ | istory Next opo | rator action | | | - Access Return - Pre-F - Filtrate - TMP | |
| e-F 45 750 | Pressure / alarm h mestgoo 300- 200- 0- 100- - 200- 200- 200- 200- 2 | istory Next ope | rator action | | | - Access - Ratun - Pre-F - Tituda - 11:0 | bag Ci bag |
| e-F 45 750 | Pressure / alarm b meets 200 200 200 200 100 0 - 100 - 200 - - 200 - - - - - - - - - - - - - | Istory Next ope | rator action | 1300 | 15 | Access Raturn — Pre-E Trante — The | bag C bag |
| • -100 • -100 • -F 45 750 • -50 | Pressure / alarm k neekg 200- 200- 00- 00- - 00- - 200- 200- 20 | 1000000 | 12.45 | 13.00 | 15 | - Access - Ridan - Poč - Prés - No | bag C bag Tra inter C |

The **Pressure / alarm history** tab shows the different pressures recorded over time. The Pressure / alarm history display can be configured in the System Parameters menu option.

Use the **O** buttons to shift the time frame shown.

4.5.2 Next operator action

| CVVHE | DF Hep | arin <u> </u> | Treatment | 5 | 2 | 120 90 et Filtrate ba | g change |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|---|---|--------------------------|---|
| 30 300 | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate m⊮h 2000 | | | | Blood flo milimin 100 |
| | Heparin mith OFF | Ca dose mmol/i fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmoW blood 5.0 | | | | UF/BF 17% |
| 40 sco | Balancing I 0.30 | Treatment time h.min 02:09 | | | | | |
| 0 mmHg -100 | Pressure / alarm h Greate | r 30min 30min 1h | Filtrate bag change Dialysate bag change Ca bag change | | | | |
| Pre-F | | 1h | Citrate bag change | | | | Ca bag chang |
| Pre-F 45 750 | | 1h 1h | Citrate bag change Substituate bag change | | | | Ca bag chang Citrate bag chang Treatmen |
| Pre-F 45 750 mmig50 | | 1h 1h | Citrate bag change Substituate bag change | | | | Ca bag chang Cdirate bag chang Treatmen interrupte Care |

The **Next operator action** tab lists the tasks that remain to be performed during the treatment in chronological order.

If the time for performing the next task is less than 15 minutes away, the **Next operator action** tab will jump to the foreground (of the treatment display).

Menus

4.6 Menus

4.6.1 Setting the level in the bubble catcher



Use the Level rocker switch buttons to set the level in the bubble catcher manually.

4.6.2 Cancel preparation



- Select the Cancel preparation menu option.
- Press the Start button to start ejecting the tubing system.

Press the **Back** button to carry on mounting the tubing system.

4.6.3 Treatment pause

The **Treatment pause** function allows the patient to be disconnected from the device for a short time during treatment.

Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of cross-contamination / immune response

Reconnecting a patient to the wrong device after a treatment pause can lead to cross-contamination and elicit an immune response.

After a treatment pause, make absolutely certain that you only reconnect the same patient to the device.



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of improper handling of connection sites

Pathogens can enter the extracorporeal blood circuit.

Use aseptic technique for all blood system connections and all the connections of the sterile solutions to be used.



Select the Treatment interrupted menu option.

Press the With blood reinfusion button to pause the treatment with a blood reinfusion (cannot be selected with TPE).

Or

Press the W/o blood reinfusion button to pause the treatment without a blood reinfusion.

Press the **Continue** button to continue the treatment.

4.6.3.1 Treatment pause with blood reinfusion (CRRT only)



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of long dwell time of fluids in the tubing system

For reasons of hygiene, and taking local rules and regulations into account, a treatment pause should be kept as short as possible.



Note

Treatment pause with blood reinfusion can also be accessed directly, if the optical detector no longer detects blood during treatment and the Treatment pause with blood reinfusion is started.

Menus

- CVVHDF
 Heparin

 Post
 Carcel

 Image
 Image

 Image
 Image</t
 - Press the Stop button to stop the blood pump. The treatment pause must now be

The treatment pause **must now be** completed!

The blood pump is stopped. Balancing is switched off. Anticoagulation is switched off. The upper limits of the pressures are monitored.

Press the **Back** button to return to the Prepare for treatment pause screen.

- CVVHDF Heparin Menus 0 ml Blood floy m C 30 100 -30 m () 40 Treatment pause with blood reinfusion Hg -100 Connect access line to NaCl solution Pre-F 45 d reinfusi
- Connect the access line to an NaCl solution bag.
- Press the Start button to start blood reinfusion.
 - The blood flow is automatically limited to 100 ml/min if it was set to more than 100 ml/min for treatment. Balancing remains switched off. Anticoagulation remains switched off.

Menus



Blood reinfusion ends automatically as soon as the optical detector detects the NaCl solution.

Press the **Pause** button to interrupt the blood reinfusion.

- CVVHDF Heparin Menus Treatment interrupted m ¢ Blood flor Leve 30 100 -30 m () 40 Treatment pause with blood reinfusion mmHg -100 - NaCl solution detected - Connect return line to NaCl solution Pre-F 45
- > Connect the return line to an NaCl solution bag.
- > Press the **Start** button to start the treatment pause.

The blood flow is automatically limited to 100 ml/min if it was set to more than 100 ml/min for treatment. Balancing remains switched off. Anticoagulation remains switched off.



Prepare to connect the patient

| CVVHDF Post | Heparin <u>(i (d</u> | Men | us | <u>л</u> | eatment interrupted |
|--------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|--|
| 30 × | Level | Gancel preparation | Treatment interrupted | Switch balancing on | Blood flo milmin 100 |
| | | Change syringe | Care | Switch to predilution | UF/BF 17% |
| -300 - gffmm | | Bag change | | | |
| 40 500 | Ci-Ca information | Ca bag change | Citrate bag change | Switch off GI-Gr anticoagulation | |
| Pre-F 45 750 | 1 | Check that the | same patient is being treatment paus | ; reconnected after the e! | Car bag chan Citrate bag chan |
| | Treatmer | nt pause | Patient id | entity correct | Trosfmor |
| mitig -50 2574 | | | _ | | Cire |
| PATMENT PREPARATIO | PATIENT P | REATMENT ARAMETERS TREATN | IENT MENUS | TREATMENT END HIS | |

- The treatment pause is running. The elapsed time is displayed.
- Press the Preparation button to begin patient connection.

Press the Confirm button to confirm the correct identity of the patient.

Press the **Continue** button to continue the treatment pause.

Menus

CVVHDF

Hepari



- > Connect the access line to the patient.
- > Press the Start button to start the patient connection.

The blood pump will continue operating until the optical detector has detected blood.

Press the Continue button to continue the treatment pause.

The optical detector has detected blood. The blood pump is stopped.

- \succ Connect the return line to the patient.
- > Press the Start button to start the treatment.

Balancing is switched on. Anticoagulation is switched on.

| POSt | Cite | | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|
| 30 × | Level | Gancel preparation | Treatment Interrupted | Switch balancing o | n | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| | | Change syringe | Care | Switch to predilution | • | UF/BF |
| | | Bag change | | | | |
| 40 500 | CI-Ca information | Ca bag change | Citrate bag change | Switch off Cle anticoagulati | Gal | |
| Pre-F | | Blood de | etected | | | Ca bag change |
| 40 750 | | | | | | Citrate bag change |
| | | Treatr | nent | | | Treefmont |
| nntig -50 | 2804 | | | | | Gree |
| TREATMENT PREP. | ARATION PATERT PA | EATMENT RAMETERS | AENT MENUS | | HISTORIES | SYSTEM |

Me

Treatment pause without blood reinfusion 4.6.3.2

Risk of contamination as a result of long dwell time of blood in the

Risk of haemolysis as a result of a crushed tubing system

Risk of blood loss as a result of clotting

> Taking local rules and regulations into account, a treatment pause without blood reinfusion should be kept as short as possible.



Treatment inter

betqu

A short treatment pause is defined as lasting no more than 10 minutes. The treatment pause can be extended for a further 10 minutes, but only after confirmation by the operator.

If the treatment pause is expected to last longer, a treatment pause with blood reinfusion must be selected instead.

Press the NaCl solution button to start a treatment pause using NaCl solution.

Or

120 90 60 30 0 min

Filtrate bag change

Press the Recirc. connector button to start a treatment pause using the recirculation connector.

Press the **Back** button to return to the Prepare for treatment pause screen.

Circulation with NaCl solution

CVVHDF

m ()

30

n ()

40

Pre-F

Heparin



Prepare for treatment pause without blood reinfusion

Circulation

Circulation w

Press the Stop button to stop the blood pump.

The blood pump is stopped. Balancing is switched off. Anticoagulation is switched off.

Press the **Back** button to return to the Prepare for treatment pause without blood reinfusion screen.

Menus





Circulation with recirculation connector

| Post | Heparin | Men | us | \sim | Filtrate bag change |
|---|-------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ∎ ¢ 30 ∞ | Level | Gencel preparation | Treatment interrupted | Switch off balancing | Blood flo milmin 100 |
| | | Change syringe | Care | Switch to predilution | UF/8F 17% |
| -300 | | Bag change | | | |
| 40 500 | Ci-Ca information | Ca bag change | Citrate bag change | Switch off CI-Ca anticoagulation | |
| Pre-F 45 750 | c | Circulation with recirculat | ion connector selecte | ıd. | Ca bag char Cdraft bag char |
| | Ва | ck | Bloo | d pump Stop | Traefmor |
| mHg -30 3505 | | | | | Care |
| and the second se | | | | | |

- Connect the access and return lines to an NaCl solution bag.
- > Press the **Start** button to start the treatment pause.

The blood flow is automatically limited to 100 ml/min if it was set to more than 100 ml/min for treatment. Balancing remains switched off. Anticoagulation remains switched off.

Press the Stop button to stop the blood pump.

> The blood pump is stopped. Balancing is switched off. Anticoagulation is switched off.

Press the **Back** button to return to the Prepare for treatment pause without blood reinfusion screen.

- > Connect the access and return lines to the recirculation connector.
- > Press the **Start** button to start the treatment pause.

The blood flow is automatically limited to 100 ml/min if it was set to more than 100 ml/min for treatment. Balancing remains switched off. Anticoagulation remains switched off.



The pressure test for testing the connections of the recirculation connector will start automatically.

If the pressure test is completed successfully, the treatment pause will start automatically.

Menus





Prepare to connect the patient

| CVVHDF Post | Heparin <u>(i (d</u> | Menus | | Tre | itment interrupted | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|--|--|
| mi ¢ 30 ∞ | Level | Gancel preparation | Treatment interrupted | Switch balancing on | Blood flo milimin 100 | |
| | | Change syringe | Care | Switch to predilution | UF/BF 17% | |
| -300 | | Bag change | | | | |
| | CI-Ca information | Ca bag change | Citrate bag change | Switch off GI-Ga anticoagulation | | |
| Pre-F 45 750 | I | Check that the | same patient is being treatment paus | g reconnected after the ie! | Car bag chan Citrate ban ship | |
| | Treatmen | nt pause | Patient id | entity correct | Treatmen | |
| nmitig -50 2574 | | | | | Gtre | |
| | | | | and the owner of the owner of the owner | | |

The treatment pause is running. The elapsed time is displayed.

Press the Preparation button to begin patient connection.

Press the Confirm button to confirm the correct identity of the patient.

Press the **Continue** button to continue the treatment pause.

> Connect the access and return lines to the

Balancing is switched on. Anticoagulation is switched on.

Press the Continue button to continue the

> Press the Start button to start the



4.6.4 Switching balancing off/on



Note

A substituate bolus is not possible if balancing is switched off.

patient.

treatment.

treatment pause.

If balancing remains switched off for more than 10 minutes, a warning is issued.



Note

If balancing is switched off during a treatment with Ci-Ca anticoagulation, the calcium substitution is stopped. The citrate supply continues running until the message "Balancing switched off" is displayed.

If balancing remains switched off, the citrate supply will be stopped after a further 6 minutes.

When balancing is switched on, Ci-Ca anticoagulation starts automatically.

Menus

| CVVHDF Post | Heparin | Men | us | 5 | 120 90 60 30 0 min Filtrate bag change |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| _ * ¢ 30 ∞ | Level | Gancel preparation | Treatment interrupted | Switch off balancing | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| | T | Change syringe | Care | Switch to predilution | UF/8F |
| -300 | | Bag change | | | |
| 40 50 | CI-Ca information | Ca bag change | Citrate bag change | Switch off CI-C anticoagulation | |
| 0 | | | | | |
| Pre-F | | | | | Ca bag change |
| 40 750 | | | | | Citrate bag change |
| | | | | | Interrupted |
| -50 289 | | | | | Care |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS | PATIENT , | TREATMENT PARAMETERS TREATM | MENT | TREATMENT | HISTORIES SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

- To switch balancing off, select the Switch off balancing menu option. The balancing scales in the status bar will turn yellow.
- To switch balancing on, select the Switch on balancing menu option. The balancing scales in the status bar will turn green.

4.6.5 Change syringe



Note

If the syringe change takes longer than 5 minutes, a message will be displayed.



4.6.6 Care mode is active

The Care mode temporarily reduces the blood flow and extends the alarm limit windows to allow patient care procedures to be performed.


Select the Care menu option. The blood flow is reduced to 40 ml/min.

Balancing is switched off. Anticoagulation is switched on. The upper limits of the pressures are monitored.

To continue with the treatment, press Continue.

Treatment is continued, with the blood flow rate previously set for treatment.



After a blood volume of 200 ml has been delivered, a screen prompt appears.

- > To repeat the Care mode, press **Repeat**.
- To continue with the treatment, press Continue.

Treatment is continued, with the blood flow rate previously set for treatment.

4.6.7 Switching between predilution and postdilution



Note

The Ci-Ca postCVVHDF treatment option is a pure postdilution treatment. Switching to predilution is not permitted during a Ci-Ca postCVVHDF treatment. For this treatment option, switching to predilution is only possible if the citrate anticoagulation is switched off first. However, citrate anticoagulation cannot be reactivated in this case, except if the treatment mode is switched from predilution back to postdilution first.

| CVVHDF Post | Heparin | Mer | <u>n</u> | 120 90 e Filtrate ba | 0 30 0 min ag change | |
|--------------------------|------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 30 30 | Level | Cancel preparation | Treatment interrupted | Switch balancing of | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| | T | Change syringe | Care | Switch to predilution | | + UF/BF 16% |
| | | Bag change | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Pre-F i | Connect su | Switch to predilution | predilution | e blood pump! | 0 | |
| 45 750 | _ | Switch | n over | | | Sector for preditation |
| 0 nvvHg -50 2510 | Cor | ifirm | | ancel | | Gare |
| Nes TREATMENT PREPARATIO | РАТЕНТ | TREATMENT PARAMETERS | MENT | s TREATMENT END | HISTORIES | SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

- Select the Switch to predilution/postdilution menu option.
- Reconnect the substituate line according to the instructions.
 Balancing is stopped.
- > Press the **Confirm** button to confirm the switchover.

Press the **Cancel** button to cancel the process.

4.6.8 Bag change (substituate/dialysate/filtrate)



Warning

Risk of circulatory disturbance as a result of excessive fluid removal

After emptying the filtrate bag, make sure the drain valve is closed tight and not dripping.



Note

Bags must only be changed after selecting the **Bag change** menu option.

If the bag change takes longer than 10 minutes, a message will be displayed.



- > Select the **Bag change** menu option.
- Change bags according to the instructions.

Balancing is switched off. Make sure you load the solutions onto the correct scales. Observe the colour coding of the connectors.

Visually check that the tubing systems are free of air.

If there is still air in any of the tubing systems:

- Press the appropriate **Deaerate** button for the tubing systems concerned.
- Press the Exit button to return to the treatment screen.

Treatment is continued with the current weight of each changed bag. Balancing is started automatically.

4.6.9 Ci-Ca information

| CVVHDF | Heparin Ci Ca | | Menus | 5. | 2 | 120 90 e Filtrate ba | 0 30 0 min ng change |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|--|-------|-------------------|-------------------------|---|
| 30 300 | Solutions | Acid base s | tatus | | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| 0 mity_30 | Citrate soluti Ca soluti | on on | (4 %) 136 mmol/l 97 mmol/l | | 1000 ml 310 ml | | UF/BF 17% |
| 40 | Dialys: Substitu | ate ate | Ca-free Ca 1.50 mmol/l | | | | |
| nvetig -100 | Heparin syrin Filtrate b | ge ag | Fresenius Injectomat 1 filtrate bag | | 50 ml 10 l | - | |
| Pre-F 45 750 | | | | | | - | Ca bag change Citrate bau change |
| | | | | | Back | | Incatment |
| 0 | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | _ | | | | | Care |
| TREATMENT PREPARA OPTIONS | HON PATIENT | TREATMENT | TREATMENT | MEHUS | TREATMENT | HISTOPHES | SYSTEM |

- Select the Ci-Ca information menu option.
- The following tabs can be selected:
- Solutions
 Acid-base statut
- Acid-base status

The **Solutions** tab contains information on the required solutions.

Press the Back button to return to the Menus screen.

Chapter 4: Operation

Menus



4.6.10 Ca bag change



Note

If the bag change takes longer than 2 minutes, a message will be displayed.



- > Select the **Ca bag change** menu option.
- > Change bags according to the instructions.

The Acid-base status tab contains

balance.

Menus screen.

information on the effects on the acid-base

> Press the **Back** button to return to the

Balancing is stopped automatically. The calcium pump is stopped. The citrate pump continues running.

Press the Exit button to return to the treatment screen. Treatment is continued with the new volume of the changed bag.

Press the **Back** button to cancel the bag change.

As soon as the screen is closed, balancing is automatically switched on and the calcium pump starts.

4.6.11 Citrate bag change



Note

If the bag change takes longer than 2 minutes, a message will be displayed.



- Select the Citrate bag change menu option.
- Change bags according to the instructions.

Balancing is stopped automatically. The Ci-Ca pumps are stopped.

Press the Exit button to return to the treatment screen. Treatment is continued with the new

volume of the changed bag.

Press the **Back** button to cancel the bag change.

As soon as the screen is closed, balancing is automatically switched on and the Ci-Ca pumps start.

4.6.12 Switching off Ci-Ca anticoagulation



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of wrong composition of the solutions

There is a risk of hypocalcaemia.

If Ci-Ca anticoagulation is switched off, CVVHD or CVVHDF treatment must only be continued or performed with a calcium-containing solution.

The following must be observed when Ci-Ca anticoagulation is switched off:

- It is mandatory that the solution bags be changed
- An alternative anticoagulation method must be selected by the operator
- The Ci-Ca lines must not be removed from the pumps until the treatment has ended and the patient has been completely disconnected

CVVHDF

Hepar

Menus



- Select the Switch off Ci-Ca anticoagulation menu option.
- Press Yes to switch off the citrate anticoagulation.

Press No to continue the treatment.

- Press the Confirm button to go to the Bag change menu screen.
- Change bags according to the instructions and exit.

| Post | (1(0 | men | | | Filtrate b | ag change |
|------------------------------------|--|---|--------------------------|--------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------|
| _ * ♀ 30 ∞ | Level | Gancel preparation | Treatment interrupted | Switch balancing o | n | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| | | Change syringe | Care | Switch to predilution | | + UF/BF 16% |
| mmHg -300 | | Bag change | | | | |
| 40 500 | CI-Ca information | Gs bag change | Gitrate bag change | Switch on Gld anticoagulati | 0Fl | |
| 0 mretg -100 Pre-F 45 750 | CI- - Arrange alternative - Provide Ca-contain | Ca anticoagulati anticoagulation ing solution | on is switche | d off | | Ca bag change Citrafa |
| | | Bag ch | ange | | | Treefmont |
| o arritig -50 | 2557 | Cont | | | | Care |
| 289 TREATMENT P OPTIONS P | REPARATION PATIENT P | IREATMENT ARAMETERS TREATM | ненат менил | s TREATMENT END | HISTORIES | SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

4.6.13 Switching on Ci-Ca anticoagulation



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of wrong composition of the solutions

There is a risk of hypercalcaemia.

120 90 60 30 0 mi

- If Ci-Ca anticoagulation is switched on, CVVHD treatment must only be continued or performed with a calcium-free solution.
- If Ci-Ca anticoagulation is switched on, CVVHDF treatment must only be continued or performed with a calcium-free dialysate and a calcium-containing substituate.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance

There is a risk of hypocalcaemia or hypercalcaemia.

The post-filter calcium concentration must be checked 5 minutes after switching on the Ci-Ca anticoagulation and at regular intervals afterwards.



Note

Check that the citrate and calcium solutions have the correct concentration in each case.

Make sure the levels in the citrate and calcium drip chambers are between the markings.



- Select the Switch on Ci-Ca anticoagulation menu option.
- Press Yes to switch on the citrate anticoagulation.
- Press No to continue the treatment.



- Press the Confirm button to go to the Bag change menu screen.
- Change bags according to the instructions and exit.

4.6.14 Plasma volume calculation / Target volume input (TPE only)

| TPE | He | parin | Treat | ment | 5 | 2 | 120 90 e Plasma ba | o 30 0 min ag change |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|--------------|--------|------------------|-----------------------|--|
| 30 30 | Plasma volume Factor 1.0 | Gender Male | Height ^{cm} 175 | Weight 75 | CRIT | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| 0 | Calculated p | lasma volume ^{ml} 1 59 | Target volume ml 3500 | | | | | |
| 40 | | | | | Back | | | Plasma rate |
| | | | | | | | | + ml/min 10 |
| Pre-F 45 750 | | | | | | | | Switch att balancing |
| | | | | | | | | Bag change Treatment interrupted |
| 982 | | | | | | | | Please calculate |
| TREATMENT P OPTIONS | REPARATION | TIENT TREATN | TERS TREAT | MENT | MEIIUS | TREATMENT END | HISTOPHES | STSTEM PARAMETERS |

- > Select the **Plasma volume** menu option.
- Enter the patient data for calculating the plasma volume (PV).

The plasma volume for treatment (PV factor) is calculated and displayed.

The calculated plasma volume is displayed in the context-specific information when entering the target volume.

Press the Back button to return to the Menus screen.

4.6.15 Switching blood leak monitoring off (TPE only)



Warning

Risk for the patient due to haemolysis or blood loss / risk of blood loss due to bypassed blood leak detector

When the blood leak safety system is bypassed, monitoring for haemolysis or blood loss is deactivated temporarily or for the entire treatment.

- \succ In this case, the operator is responsible for the patient's safety.
- Especially when treating permanently haemolytic plasma, look for additional dark colouration in the plasma circuit in the event of a blood leak.



Note

If the message **Blood leak detected** is pending, the treatment option TPE allows you to deactivate the safety system. This means that monitoring for haemolysis and blood leaks is cancelled for the duration of the current treatment. The safety system is reactivated when the device is switched on again.



Note

If during the observation phase with the blood leak detector deactivated it is noted there is no more haemolysis, it is strongly recommended to switch on the blood leak monitoring again.



Note

If a blood leak is detected during treatment with the safety system deactivated, the message **Blood leak detected** still has to be acknowledged.



A blood leak message is pending:

- In the menu, select Switch blood leak monitoring off.
- Press Confirm to switch the blood leak monitoring off.



The deactivation of the blood leak monitoring is indicated in the treatment screen.

Look for additional dark colouration in the plasma line in the event of a blood leak.

Monitoring can be reactivated at any time in the Treatment menu.

Histories

4.7 Histories



- The following tabs can be selected:
- Balance data
- Balance history
- Events

The **Balance data** tab shows the current treatment duration and the treatment option selected at the start of treatment.

4.7.1 Balance data

The balance data shown by the device is based on the values measured by the scales, and is subject to the tolerance and error margins specified in the technical data.

4.7.1.1 CRRT



The **Balance data** tab shows detailed treatment parameters. It also shows:

Start date of treatment Start time of treatment option Elapsed time since the start of treatment or last balance data reset

Pressing the **Reset balance data** button will reset all the cumulative volume information recorded so far to "zero". The treatment time and the filter life will not be reset.

| Histories | |
|-----------------|--|
| Balancing | Balancing = (substituate bolus volume) + (net UF volume) Example: -2.20 I = (0.20 I) + (-2.40 I) If no substituate bolus was administered, the balancing value corresponds to the net UF volume. If a substituate bolus is administered, the corresponding amount remains in the patient, i.e., the substituate bolus volume is not extracted by the filter. This is why the balancing value needs to be adjusted accordingly. The administered heparin volume is extracted by the filter (both bolus and continuous volumes). This means that the total administered heparin volume does not affect the balance. The total administered citrate and calcium solution volume is extracted by the filter. The citrate and calcium volumes therefore do not affect the balance. If treatment is performed without a net UF rate, and no substituate bolus was administered, the balancing value will read "0.00 I". If fluid is removed from the patient without being returned, the balancing value will be negative (preceded by a minus sign). The balancing value can turn positive if the fluid removal is compensated by administering one or more substituate boluses. As a rule, the balancing value will either be negative or neutral. The calculation period of the balance data is shown under Entire period. Pressing the Reset balance data button will reset all the balance data to zero, and the calculation period will restart. |
| Treatment time | This is the effective treatment duration so far, not including messages and periods during which balancing is switched off. Pressing the Reset balance data button will not reset the treatment time. |
| Filter life | This is the total time that has elapsed since blood began flowing through the tubing system. This is normally more than the treatment time shown, since it includes periods during which the treatment time was stopped in response to messages. The filter life is not affected by a balance data reset. |
| Balancing error | If the total balancing error detected by the device exceeds 500 g, the treatment must be terminated. Balancing stops and cannot be continued. |

Histories

4.7.1.2 TPE

| TPE | Heparin | ł | listories | 5 | (| Filtrate ba | o 30 0 min ig change |
|----------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| i | Balance data | Balance history | Events | 1 | | | Blood flow |
| | | | Current treatment Start: TPE | Enti Date 21.11.2018 | Start 09:14 | Duration 00:01 | 100 |
| mmHg -300 | | Exc | hanged plasma | 1.00 | 1 | | |
| 40 500 | | Hepar Continuous | in bolus volume heparin volume | 0.0 0.0 | mi mi | | Plasma rate |
| needig -100 | | | | | | | ml/min 10 |
| Pre-F | | | Treatment time | 00:05 | h-min | _ | Switch balancing on |
| 45 750 | | | Filter life | 00:00 | h:min | | Bag change |
| | | | | Reset ba | lance da | ta | Treatment interrupted |
| nnthy -50 | | | | - | | | Plasma calculate |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS PREFA | PATIENT PATIENT | TREATMENT | TREATMENT | MERIUS | REATMENT | HISTORIES | SYSTEM PARAMETERS |

The **Balance data** tab displays detailed treatment parameters. It also shows:

- Start date of treatment
- Start time of treatment option
- Time since start of treatment

Pressing the **Reset balance data** button will reset all the cumulative volume information recorded so far to "zero". The treatment time and the filter life will not be reset.

| Exchanged plasma | The exchanged plasma is the plasma volume filtered off from the patient's blood and substituted by the plasma replacement solution. |
|------------------|---|
| | The administered heparin volume is extracted by the filtrate pump (both bolus and continuous volumes). This means that the total administered heparin volume does not affect the balance. |
| | The calculation period of the balance data is shown under "Period". |
| Treatment time | This is the effective treatment duration so far, not including messages during which balancing is switched off. |
| Filter life | The filter life is the parameter that is used to monitor how long blood has been flowing through the tubing system. This is basically the same as the treatment time, but will normally be higher, because, while the treatment time count is suspended when balancing is interrupted, the filter life count continues. |
| Balancing error | If the total balancing error detected by the device exceeds 500 g, the treatment must be terminated. Balancing stops and cannot be continued. |

Histories

4.7.2 Balance history



4.7.3 Events



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of misinterpreting data

Errors in the patient-specific treatment parameters can result from misinterpreting the data shown in the Events tab if the treatment parameters are determined on this basis.

The **Balance history** tab shows the balance

data during a particular period of the current

treatment, depending on the treatment mode.

You can enter the Date, End, and Duration to

The balance data in the Balance history tab is

view a calculation period of your choice.

updated every 15 minutes.

- The data listed under Events must not be used as a basis for diagnosis and/or therapy-related decisions.
- Any irregularities indicated by this data must always be verified by an independent diagnosis.

The event log lists messages and parameter settings in chronological order. The messages are colour-coded according to priority.

The list of messages shows every single occurrence of an alarm condition, with the time of occurrence, message number, and message title (the alarm system cannot be switched off).

The maximum event log capacity cannot be exhausted even by the maximum possible treatment duration. The event log contents are automatically deleted if the device starts a new patient connection.

A power failure will have no effect on the event log, provided the battery is working. In the event of a complete power failure (mains power failure and device voltage supply failure), all the entries in the event log will be lost.



Use the **S** buttons to scroll back and forth between the individual pages of the list.

Use the 💿 🕑 buttons to jump to the beginning or end of the list.

The **Events** field allows you to filter the event list.



The **Events** field offers the following filters for the events list:

- All
- Messages
- Parameters

Press **OK** to apply your selected filter and return to the events list.

4.8 System Parameters



Note

The responsible organisation should define the most important configurable parameter settings itself (or confirm the default values) and have these set by service support as required.

The **System Parameters** menu allows you to choose device and treatment settings.

Grey menu fields can only be selected with the appropriate access authorisation (e.g. UserCard).

The access authorisation level shown in the screens in this document can differ from the level you actually have (whether unrestricted access or defined by your UserCard).

System parameters that can be edited with unrestricted access or a UserCard are listed in tables, showing the default value, the possible value range, and the required access authorisation level.

4.8.1 Access without UserCard



Menu fields that can be selected without a UserCard are:

- Pressure selection
- Device information
- Basic settings
- \succ Select the menu option required.

4.8.1.1 Pressure selection



The **Pressure selection** menu option allows you to select the pressures you wish to have displayed in the Pressure / alarm history tab of the **Treatment** screen.

- \succ Select the required pressures.
- Press the OK button to apply your selection.

4.8.1.2 Device information



The **Device information** menu option displays general information on the device. For example: serial number, software version, operating hours, etc.

4.8.1.3 Basic settings



Note

After changing the date or time, the memory contents will no longer be in the correct chronological sequence, which may lead to problems in displaying the error logs, histories and event logs.

Switching the device off and back on again is recommended after changing the date or time.

After changing the language, the device must be restarted before the new language is applied.

The minimum possible value of the Sound volume range ensures that sounds emitted by the device remain audible. The sound volume adjustment only applies until the device is next switched off. When the device is switched back on, the sound volume will automatically return to the default value. The responsible organisation can only set the minimum sound volume and standard sound volume with a ServiceCard.



Tip

Local summer/winter time can be set in **Basic settings**.



The setup parameters shown in the table below can be set in the **Basic settings** menu.

Pressing the **Information** button will show you the changed parameters and when the changes will be applied.

Press the Back button to return to the System Parameters screen.

| Basic settings | Default value | Value range | Access level |
|-------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|--------------|
| Date | _ | 01.01.1999 to 31.12.2037 | Unrestricted |
| Time | _ | 00:00:00 to 23:59:59 | Unrestricted |
| Sound volume | 6 | Minimum sound volume up to 9 | Unrestricted |
| Pressure history period | 60 min | 10 to 180 min | Unrestricted |

| Basic settings | Default value | Value range | Access level | |
|---------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|--------------|--|
| Brightness | 5 | 1 to 5 | Unrestricted | |
| Ca concentration of substituate | 1.5 mmol/l | 1 to 2 mmol/l | UserCard | |
| Language | German | Depends on language package | UserCard | |

4.8.2 Access with UserCard



Menu fields that can be selected with a UserCard are:

- Applications
- User setup
- ➤ Insert the UserCard into the card slot.
- \succ Select the menu option required.

4.8.2.1 Applications



The **Applications** menu can be used for entering and viewing parameters for operator training and for the patient data management system (PDMS).

Press the Back button to return to the System Parameters screen.

Chapter 4: Operation

System Parameters

Training

| | | | | Training | | <u>• U</u> | 0 25 5 Functio | nal test |
|---------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|-------------------|-------------|
| | | Create te | st message | 1 4 | Alarm scheme | | | |
| | | No test | message | | 2 | | | |
| | (| DD simulation | - | PC Direct | 1 | Screenshots | | |
| | | Inactive | | Inactive | 6 | Inactive | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | Back |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | Information |
| 13 | _ | | Incardinate | | 1 | | _ | _ |
| OPTIONS | PREPARATION | PATIENT | PARAMETERS | TREATMENT | Mellus | END | HISTORIES | STSTEM |

The **Training** menu can be used to activate the OD simulation, change the alarm scheme, and create test messages.

Pressing the **Information** button will show you the changed parameters and when the changes will be applied.

Press the Back button to return to the Applications screen.

| Training | Default value | Value range |
|---------------------|-----------------|---|
| OD simulation | inactive | Active, Inactive |
| Alarm scheme | 2 | 1 to 2 |
| Create test message | No test message | For alarm scheme 1: No test message Alarm/system error Warning Advisory For alarm scheme 2: No test message System error High-priority alarm Medium-priority alarm Low-priority alarm High-priority advisory |

• PDMS

| | | | | PDMS | | <u>• U</u> | 0 25 Functi | 50 75 100 % |
|---------|-------------|-----------|------------|----------------------|--------|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| | | Device IP | 1 | Subnet mask | Sta | ndard gateway | / | |
| | ŝ | 0.0.0.0 | Í | 0.0.0.0 | 19 | 192.168.0.1 | | |
| | | DHCP | 1 | Cyclic data transfer | Jump | to Patient me | nu | |
| | | Active | 1 | Inactive | | Inactive | | |
| | | Server IP | 1 | Server port | 1 | Host port | | |
| | | 0.0.0.0 | l l | 700 | 1 | 2512 | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | Back |
| | | | | | | | | 0 |
| | | | | | | | | Information |
| 376 | | | | | - | | | |
| OPTIONS | PREPARATION | PATERT | PARAMETERS | TREATMENT | MEILUS | END | HISTORIES | PARAMETERS |

The **PDMS** menu can be used to view the parameters for the patient data management system (PDMS).

Pressing the **Information** button will show you the changed parameters and when the changes will be applied.

Press the Back button to return to the Applications screen.

4.8.3 User setup



The main configurable parameter values can be set in the **User setup** menu.

- Heparin
- User interface
- CRRT
- Press the Back button to return to the System Parameters screen.

4.8.3.1 Heparin



Note

Changes to the syringe type or the heparin bolus need to be made before the functional test is completed, so that the changes apply to the treatment that is to follow.

Chapter 4: Operation

System Parameters



The **Heparin** menu can be used to set the parameters for heparin anticoagulation shown in the table below.

Pressing the **Information** button will show you the changed parameters and when the changes will be applied.

Press the Back button to return to the User setup screen.

| Heparin | Default value | Value range |
|------------------------|---------------|---|
| Syringe type | 0 (invalid) | Fresenius Medical Care 30 ml B. Braun Omnifix 30 ml BD Perfusion 50 ml Fresenius Injectomat 50 ml B. Braun Perfusor 50 ml B. Braun Omnifix 50 ml BD Plastipak 50 ml |
| Heparin OFF alarm time | 1 min | 0 to 10 min |
| Heparin bolus | 1 ml | 0.1 to 5.0 ml |

4.8.3.2 User interface

| | | User interface | <u>• U</u> | 0 25 50 75 100 % Functional test |
|--------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| | Return delay | | | |
| | Button sounds | Alarm scheme | Pause time sound to Scheme 2 16 | ~ |
| | Max. preparation time h 10 | Max. kit life ^h 72 | Max. blood volume | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | Back |
| | | | | 0 |
| | | | | Information |
| TREATMENT PR | EPARATION PATIENT PAR | CATMENT CAMETERS TREATMENT | MENUS TREATMENT END | HISTORIES SYSTEM |

The system parameters of the user interface shown in the table below can be set in the **User interface** menu.

Pressing the **Information** button will show you the changed parameters and when the changes will be applied.

Press the Back button to return to the User setup screen.

| User interface | Default value | Value range |
|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| Return delay | 11 min | 11 to 30 min |
| Button sounds | Active | Inactive, Active |
| Alarm scheme | 2 | 1, 2 |

4.8.3.3 CRRT



The **CRRT** screen allows you to set treatment-specific parameters.

- Pressure alarm limits
- Ci-Ca anticoagulation
- General parameters
- Treatment parameters
- Press the Back button to return to the User setup screen.

CRRT pressure alarm limits



Note

Changes to the pressure alarm limits need to be made before the first pump segment is inserted, so that the changes apply to the treatment that is to follow.

Chapter 4: Operation

System Parameters

| _ | | CRRT pressure alarm limits | <u>• U</u> | 0 25 50 75 Functional test |
|---|---------------------------------|--|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| | Access pressure limit value | Access pressure alarm | | |
| | Symmetrical | mmHg 200 | | |
| | Return pressure limit value | Return pressure alarm window | Return pressure window | , |
| | | size | position | |
| | Asymmetrical | 100 | >= 10 mmHg | |
| | Pre-filter pressure limit value | Pre-filter pressure alarm window size | | |
| | Symmetrical | mmHg 200 | | |
| | | - | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | Ва |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | Es Inform |
| | | | | B. |

The **CRRT pressure alarm limits** menu can be used to set the pressure parameters shown in the table below.

Pressing the **Information** button will show you the changed parameters and when the changes will be applied.

Press the Back button to return to the CRRT screen.

| CRRT pressure alarm limits | Default value | Value range |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| Access pressure limit value | Symmetrical | Asymmetrical, Symmetrical |
| Access pressure alarm window size | 200 mmHg | 40 to 200 mmHg |
| Return pressure limit value | Asymmetrical | Asymmetrical, Symmetrical |
| Return pressure alarm window size | 100 mmHg | 40 to 200 mmHg |
| Pre-filter pressure limit value | Symmetrical | Asymmetrical, Symmetrical |
| Pre-filter pressure alarm window size | 200 mmHg | 40 to 200 mmHg |

Ci-Ca anticoagulation



Pressing **Ci-Ca anticoagulation** allows you to view the parameters for Ci-Ca anticoagulation.

Pressing the **Information** button will show you the changed parameters and when the changes will be applied.

Press the Back button to return to the CRRT screen.

General parameters, adult



Note

Changes to the "General parameters, adult" need to be made before the start of filling, so that the changes apply to the treatment that is to follow.

| | | | | General parameters, adu | # <u>•</u> U | 0 25 Function | 50 75 100 9 |
|----------|-------------|--|----------|---|---|------------------|-------------|
| | R | tinse volume ^{ml} 300 | | UF rinse volume ml 300 | Substituate bolu mi 100 | 15 | |
| | 1 | Femperature *C 38.0 | j. | Preparation with recirculation connector Inactive | Filtrate bag volur | ne | |
| | M: pati | ax, blood flov lent connecti ml/min 100 | N ion | Blood flow ^{milimin} 100 | Max. blood reinfus flow mi/min 100 | ion | |
| | ' | Max. bag life 12 | | | | | |
| | | | | | | 1 | Back |
| | | | | | | | 0 |
| | | | | | | | Informatio |
| REATMENT | PREPARATION | PATERT | TREATMEN | T TREATMENT | MERUS TREATMENT END | HISTORIES | STSTEN |

The **General parameters**, adult menu can be used for setting the general parameters shown in the table below that are to apply for all CRRT procedures.

Pressing the **Information** button will show you the changed parameters and when the changes will be applied.

Press the Back button to return to the CRRT screen.

| General parameters, adult | Default value | Value range |
|------------------------------------|---------------|------------------|
| Rinse volume | 300 ml | 300 to 5000 ml |
| UF rinse volume | 300 ml | 300 to 2000 ml |
| Max. patient connection blood flow | 100 ml/min | 10 to 100 ml/min |
| Blood flow | 100 ml/min | 10 to 200 ml/min |
| Max. blood reinfusion flow | 100 ml/min | 10 to 100 ml/min |
| Temperature | 38 °C | 35 to 39 °C |
| Substituate bolus | 100 ml | 100 to 200 ml |

• Treatment parameters, adult



Note

Changes to the "Treatment parameters, adult" need to be made before the start of filling, so that the changes apply to the treatment that is to follow.

Chapter 4: Operation

System Parameters



The **Treatment parameters, adult** menu can be used for setting the specific treatment parameters shown in the table below for the different CRRT procedures.

Treatment options without Ci-Ca anticoagulation.

- CVVHDF
- CVVHD
- CVVH
- Pre-Post CVVH

Treatment options with Ci-Ca anticoagulation

- Ci-Ca postCVVHDF
- Ci-Ca CVVHD
- Press the Back button to return to the CRRT screen.

| CVVHDF | Default value | Value range |
|--------------------------|---------------|------------------|
| Predilution substituate | 1000 ml/h | 600 to 4800 ml/h |
| Postdilution substituate | 1000 ml/h | 600 to 4800 ml/h |
| Dialysate | 1000 ml/h | 600 to 4800 ml/h |

| CVVHD | Default value | Value range |
|-----------|---------------|------------------|
| Dialysate | 2000 ml/h | 600 to 4800 ml/h |

| СЛЛН | Default value | Value range |
|--------------------------|---------------|------------------|
| Predilution substituate | 1000 ml/h | 600 to 4800 ml/h |
| Postdilution substituate | 1000 ml/h | 600 to 4800 ml/h |

| Pre-Post CVVH | Default value | Value range |
|--------------------------|---------------|------------------|
| Predilution substituate | 1000 ml/h | 600 to 4800 ml/h |
| Postdilution substituate | 1000 ml/h | 600 to 4800 ml/h |

| Ci-Ca postCVVHDF | Default value | Value range |
|--------------------------|---------------|------------------|
| Postdilution substituate | 1000 ml/h | 600 to 2400 ml/h |
| Dialysate | 2000 ml/h | 600 to 4800 ml/h |

| Ci-Ca postCVVHDF | Default value | ult value Value range | |
|---------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|--|
| Citrate dose | 5 mmol/l | 2 to 6 mmol/l | |
| Calcium dose | 1.7 mmol/l | 0.1 to 3.0 mmol/l | |
| Ca concentration of substituate | 1.5 mmol/l | 1 to 2 mmol/l | |

| Ci-Ca CVVHD | Default value | Value range | |
|--------------|---------------|-------------------|--|
| Dialysate | 2000 ml/h | 600 to 4800 ml/h | |
| Citrate dose | 4 mmol/l | 2 to 6 mmol/l | |
| Calcium dose | 1.7 mmol/l | 0.0 to 3.0 mmol/l | |

4.8.3.4 TPE



The **TPE** menu allows you to set treatment-specific parameters:

- Pressure alarm limits
- Treatment parameters TPE
- Press the Back button to return to the User setup screen.

• TPE pressure alarm limits



Note

Changes to the pressure alarm limits need to be made before the first pump segment is inserted, so that the changes apply to the treatment that is to follow.

Chapter 4: Operation

System Parameters



The **TPE pressure alarm limits** menu can be used to set the pressure parameters.

Pressing the **Information** button will show you the changed parameters and when the changes will be applied.

Press the Back button to return to the TPE menu.

| TPE pressure alarm limits | Default value | Value range |
|-----------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| Access pressure limit value | Symmetrical | Asymmetrical, Symmetrical |
| Access pressure alarm window size | 200 mmHg | 40 to 200 mmHg |
| Return pressure limit value | Asymmetrical | Asymmetrical, Symmetrical |
| Return pressure alarm window size | 100 mmHg | 40 to 200 mmHg |

Treatment parameters TPE



Note

Changes to the treatment parameters TPE need to be made before the first pump segment is inserted, so that the changes apply to the treatment that is to follow.

| | Rinse volume mi | UF rinse volume ml | Preparation with recirculation connector | |
|----------------|---|--|---|--------|
| | 300 | 300 | Active | |
| Max | patient connection blood flow ml/min 100 | Blood flow mi/min 100 | Max. blood reinfusion flow ^{ml/min} 100 | |
| | Plasma treatment rate | Plasma filter preparation Blood volume mi 300 | Plasma filter preparation Plasma volume ml 106 | |
| | Filtrate bag volume | | | |
| Pr | e-F pressure limit value | Pre-filter pressure alarm window size | TMP max. limit value | |
| | Symmetrical | 200 | mmHg 100 | Bac |
| | | | | C |
| | | | | Inform |
| and the second | | 1 Y | | |

The **Treatment parameters TPE** menu can be used for setting TPE-specific parameters.

Pressing the **Information** button will show you the changed parameters and when the changes will be applied.

Press the Back button to return to the TPE menu.

| Treatment parameters TPE | Default value | Value range | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|--|
| Rinse volume | 300 ml | 300 to 5000 ml | |
| UF rinse volume | 300 ml | 300 to 2000 ml | |
| Max. patient connection blood flow | 100 ml/min | 10 to 100 ml/min | |
| Blood flow | 100 ml/min | 40 to 300 ml/min | |
| Max. reinfusion blood flow | 100 ml/min | 10 to 100 ml/min | |
| Pre-filter pressure limit value | Symmetrical | Asymmetrical, Symmetrical | |
| Pre-filter pressure alarm window size | 200 mmHg | 40 to 200 mmHg | |

Network

4.9 Network

4.9.1 Observe before use



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of corrupted data

Data corruption or data loss caused by the network and the server software cannot be detected by the device. This can lead to malfunctions.

- The system installer must ensure that device data is processed securely, e.g., in PC software applications.
- The network operator must ensure that any data transferred without encryption is protected.



Note

There are special requirements for further processing of the data.

The network operator is responsible for ensuring that the network is available for the required data transfer.

Data corruption affecting the correctness, plausibility and completeness of the data that is caused by the network and the server software is not detected by the device.



Note

Only devices complying with the regulations of (DIN) EN 60950-1:2006 or IEC 60950-1:2006 must be connected to the LAN ports.

When connecting the device to Ethernet, connect the cable first to the device, then to the external network. Only the shielded Cat 5 Ethernet cable listed under Additional equipment must be used for this purpose (see chapter 8.2 on page 8-5).



Note

The network operator is responsible for the protection of data transferred without encryption.

The data transfer of alarm states via the network must not be used for the purpose of external alerts (nurse call).



Note

In normal condition, the enclosure leakage current from or between components of the system must not exceed 0.1 mA within the patient environment (according to EN 60601-1-1). This must be ensured when installing the system.

Network

4.9.2 PDMS connection



Warning

Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of corrupted data

Data transferred to a patient data management system (PDMS) must not be used as a basis for diagnosis and/or therapy-related decisions.



Risk for the patient as a result of ignored alarm signals

The reliability of alarm signal transmissions to external alarm systems cannot be guaranteed, meaning that alarms can fail to be indicated externally.

Stay close enough to the device to be able to notice any alarms it emits at all times.

A shielded Cat 5 patch cable (3 metres long) is included with the multiFiltratePRO for the connection to the data network of a patient data management system. Further cables can be ordered in different lengths if required.

Network

5 Alarm processing

5.1 Repeated confirmation of a message

For the safety systems, the relevant alarm limits and alarm conditions described in chapter 12 "Specifications", under "Balancing/dialysate circuit and safety systems" and "Extracorporeal blood circuit and safety systems", also apply.

Alarm processing changes can be made in the Setup.

Operators must stay close enough to the device to be able to notice any emitted visual or audible alarms at all times.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of repeated message confirmation

 Always correct the problem that caused the message before confirming it.



Note

When alarms and warnings occur, follow the information given in the messages, as well as any explanations given in the Help function (?).

If the following alarms and warnings are repeatedly confirmed without being corrected, this can endanger the patient as follows:

| Alarms / warnings | Possible patient hazard |
|---|---|
| Pressure drop in the return line | External blood leak |
| Access pressure and return | Bleeding into tissue |
| pressure alarms | Haemolysis, through kinks in the tubing system |
| Anticoagulation alarms (e.g., heparin pump alarms) | Loss of blood through blood- clotting in the extracorporeal blood circuit |
| | Wrong dosage of anticoagulation medium |
| Blood leak alarms | Loss of blood into filtrate/plasma |
| Isolated citrate dosage with balancing switched off | Citrate accumulation/disruption of acid-base balance |
| Low temperature warnings | Hypothermia |

5.2 Alarm schemes



Note

The alarm scheme used must be specified by the responsible organisation, and its suitability for the place of operation and the prevailing environmental conditions must be assessed.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of ignored alarm signals

If different alarm schemes are set for different devices, the same alarm condition can generate a different alarm response, depending on the device in use. This can lead to misinterpretation.

> Use the same alarm scheme for all devices.

The device features two alarm schemes. The chosen scheme is configured in the **System Parameters** menu.

Any switching between schemes must be authorised and performed by – or on behalf of – the organisation responsible for the use of the device.

The alarm scheme defines the information, warnings and alarms provided to the operator in the event of malfunctions, according to the alarm conditions.

An alarm always comprises a visual indication and an audible tone. The required information or cause of the alarm is also displayed as text on the screen.

All visual signalling of an alarm condition and priority is displayed using the operating status indicator (traffic light). This displays the appropriate colour (red, yellow, green) in a specific flashing pattern.

The audible signals generated by alarm conditions are correlated with the visual status indications. They also use a range of tone sequences and patterns of repetition to inform the operator about the priority and the relevance of the alarm condition.

Alarm scheme "one" displays a state-oriented system of alarms and corresponds to the former alarm schemes provided by the Fresenius Medical Care range of devices.

Alarm scheme "two" displays the potential danger presented by an alarm condition. It assigns a priority to every alarm and is based on the alarm standard EN 60601-1-8 for medical devices used in intensive medical care.

5.2.1 Alarm scheme one

This alarm scheme defines an absolutely unambiguous relationship between the alarm condition, device response and alarm signalling.

| Basic assignment: | Alarm condition stops the blood and balancing circuits: The operating status indicator (traffic light) is red and the device emits an audible tone. |
|-------------------|---|
| | Alarm condition stops the balancing circuit: The operating status indicator (traffic light) is yellow and the system emits an audible tone. |
| | In addition, this scheme also provides an operator information function: Isolated audible tone without signalling the alarm condition via the operating status indicator (traffic light). |

The alarm conditions are prioritised internally. A more urgent alarm will be displayed over a less urgent alarm on the screen.

5.2.2 Alarm scheme two

This scheme is based on assigning priority levels to alarm conditions. Priorities correspond to the danger level at hand and the time before a potential hazard occurs, according to the following table:

| Possible result of failing to respond to the cause of the alarm condition | Start of potential injury | | |
|---|---------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| | Instant | Soon | Delayed |
| Death or irreversible injury | High priority | High priority | Medium priority |
| Reversible injury | High priority | Medium priority | Low priority |
| Minor injury or discomfort | Medium priority | Low priority | Low priority or no signal |

The signals and tone sequences corresponding to the various priorities are assigned uniformly within medical device groups: as a result, all devices for extracorporeal blood treatment will, as a rule, have a uniform set of alarm signals.

Basic assignment: The assignment of alarm priority to device response is as follows:

High priority:

Red flashing operating status indicator (traffic light) and repeated tone sequence of 10 beeps.

Medium priority: Yellow flashing operating status indicator (traffic light) and repeated tone sequence of 3 beeps.

Low priority: Yellow steady operating status indicator (traffic light) and repeated tone sequence of 2 beeps. In addition, this scheme also provides an operator information function: Green flashing operating status indicator (traffic light) and repeated single tone.

In this way, each alarm condition is assigned a priority that defines the alarm response of the device.

5.3 High-priority alarm conditions

Since critical alarm conditions always place the device into safe mode (treatment or blood flow is stopped), high-priority alarms of this kind occur only in exceptional cases where a subsequent patient hazard remains possible despite the automatic device response.

In alarm scheme two, the following error conditions meet the requirements of a high-priority alarm:

- Low return pressure alarm message:

Here, there is a possibility that the patient may have become disconnected from the device accidentally, but could still be losing blood through his or her vascular access site.

- High access pressure alarm message: Here, there is a possibility that the patient may have become disconnected from the device accidentally, but could still be losing blood through his or her vascular access site.
- Failure of the Ci-Ca pumps to detect the tubing system positioner: Here, there is a possibility the patient may suffer air infusion or blood loss via the Ci-Ca tubing system (line occlusion cannot be detected).

In addition, the following conditions have an elevated risk and require intensive observation and monitoring:

- Device condition following an air alarm
- Bypass condition following a blood leak alarm



Warning

Risk of blood loss as a result of clotting

If the operator fails to react properly in the event of a blood pump standstill, this can lead to clotting and the loss of the patient's blood contained in the extracorporeal circuit at the time.

Correct problems that cause an alarm condition with a blood pump standstill and start the blood pump again as fast as possible.
5.4 Alarm system

Pressure monitoring

To avoid unnecessary false alarms, the alarm limit window of a pressure can be temporarily extended, disabled, or repositioned around the current pressure, following changes to relevant parameters, after pressure alarms, or stopping/starting the pumps. Such conditions are only permitted for short times, and the current pressure monitoring status is always shown by the appropriate alarm limit window colour (yellow=active, grey=inactive). The monitoring of the maximum and minimum possible pressure limits remains unaffected.



Note

The pressure alarm limits used must be evaluated to ensure they are suitable for the patient and the selected treatment option.

In doing so, special attention must be paid to any alarm settings that could limit the effectiveness of the alarm system.

Lower return pressure limit

In the event of a low return pressure alarm, the lower limit of the return pressure can be extended from +10 mmHg (default value) to -100 mmHg as necessary, depending on the setting in the Service setup. This allows treatment to be performed with very low or even negative return pressures, if necessary.

(Factory setting: extending lower return pressure limit is deactivated)



Warning

Risk of blood loss as a result of an undetectable dislocation

Setting the lower limit of the return pressure to -100 mmHg restricts the possibilities for detecting a possible dislocation of the return line.

This option should be configured only in exceptional cases that are medically necessary and performed with care and under close supervision.



Warning Risk of blood loss as a result o

Risk of blood loss as a result of connection sites not closed correctly

To protect the patient from dangerous blood loss, return pressure monitoring of the extracorporeal blood circuit is used as a safety system against external blood leaks. However, pressure monitoring cannot detect an external blood leak in all cases. Particularly critical occurrences are dislocations of the connections to the catheters or small leaks in the high pressure components of the extracorporeal blood circuit.

The extracorporeal blood circuit must be checked regularly for leaks while treatment is in progress, paying particular attention to all the joints of the tubing system and the return line. Air infusionTo ensure that the stringent limit values for detecting air infusion are
always maintained, you may need to restrict the maximum blood flow
for low-weight patients (see chapter 12.11 on page 12-12).NoteAir infusion limit values are dependent on blood flow and patient weight.
Full sensitivity at maximum blood flow is achieved with patients
weighing upwards of 45 kg.Alarm prioritiesIn an alarm state, subsequent alarms of the same priority or of a lower

of a higher priority are signalled.

5.5 Response of the alarm system

When starting treatment or resuming treatment after an alarm

After confirming certain error messages, the activation of new error messages from the following components is delayed, or the alarm limits are reset, while the treatment is being resumed:

priority are not separately signalled by the device. Subsequent alarms

Air bubble detector



Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

- While bypassing the pressure monitoring system, the operator is responsible for the patient's safety.
- After starting active removal of air: 5 ml
- After the "Microbubbles detected" message: 2 minutes

The message **Microbubbles detected downstream of bubble catcher** can be overridden no more than 3 times in the course of a treatment. The next time the alarm occurs, **air removal** procedures must be performed.

Pressure displays

- The alarm limit windows of the pressures shown in the display are reactivated with a delay of up to 10 seconds.
- For the purpose of resuming treatment after pressure alarms, the alarm limit windows can be repositioned if this is cleared first.
- After a parameter change (e.g. stopping and starting the blood pump), the alarm limit windows are automatically deactivated for up to 10 seconds. In order to avoid repeat alarms, the alarm limit value is then either repositioned around the current pressure value, or kept as it is and reactivated, depending on the cause of the alarm.

• Bypassing an alarm (temporarily deactivating an alarm)



Warning

Risk for the patient due to haemolysis or blood loss / risk of blood loss due to bypassed blood leak detector

When the blood leak safety system is bypassed, monitoring for haemolysis or blood loss is deactivated temporarily or for the entire treatment.

- \succ In this case, the operator is responsible for the patient's safety.
- Especially when treating permanently haemolytic plasma, look for additional dark colouration in the plasma circuit in the event of a blood leak.



Note

If the message **Blood leak detected** is pending, the treatment option TPE allows you to deactivate the safety system. This means that monitoring for haemolysis and blood leaks is cancelled for the duration of the current treatment. The safety system is reactivated when the device is switched on again (see chapter 4.6.15 on page 4-103).

The **Bypass** button allows the following active alarms to be bypassed (deactivated) for a defined period:

| Alarm | Bypass time |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| Massive blood leak | Maximum 1 minute |
| Haemolysis / blood leak | Maximum 2 minutes |

Suppressing the alarm tone (Audio paused)

The **Audio paused** button allows the operator to pause (deactivate) the audible tone of a signalled alarm for a certain time. This is only possible for active alarms and is indicated by the LED of the **Audio paused** button.

The **Audio paused** function cannot be cancelled before time. If a new alarm occurs during this time, the audible alarm tone of the new alarm is signalled regardless.

| Name | Suppress time |
|-----------------------------|---------------|
| Audio paused (SOUND OFF) | 2 minutes |

5.6 Messages



Note

Each message window has a colour-coded frame. The visual and audible signalling of the messages can differ, depending on the alarm scheme used.

The **?** button can be used to access the Help function. This provides operators with further information on the possible cause as well as possible remedies.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of ignored alarm signals

If the sound volume of an alarm signal is set too low, background noises can prevent the operator from hearing the alarm tones.

Set the sound volume so that alarm tones can be heard above any background noises.



Depending on the alarm scheme used, the messages have different window frame colours and different tones according to their priority. The sound volume of the audible alarm tone can be set in the **System Parameters** menu.

Each message window contains a short description of the problem and information on how to correct it. In some cases, problems are described with the aid of illustrations.

Each display message is identified by a number in the lower left-hand corner. If a problem cannot be corrected, this number will enable service support to provide faster assistance.

5.7 Messages during the functional test



Note

If the functional test repeatedly fails to complete successfully, the available treatment options may be restricted until the error can be corrected. Always contact service support in this case.

If the battery test is failed, no treatment will be permitted by the device.

If the battery test detects an incompletely charged battery, the device will allow a treatment to be performed. However, in the event of a mains power failure, emergency operation may be even more restricted than usual.

If the test of the **Ambient temperature sensor** is failed and treatment is started regardless, the heater performance can be significantly diminished, as only default values can be used. Additional, external heating and heat monitoring measures must be taken in this case.

If the heparin pump test fails, the heparin pump can be deactivated for the entire treatment if this can be managed without heparin anticoagulation.

5.8 UF/BF message



Note

High filtrate rates in combination with low blood flow rates may lead to an inadequate concentration of blood in the haemofilter (massive increase of the TMP). To a great extent, the blood concentration required depends on the individual filter. For this reason, there is a general risk of clotting in the capillaries.

To avoid this reaction, it is advisable to keep the UF rate for postdilution to no more than 20 % of the blood flow rate.

If an inadvisable UF/BF ratio of over 20 % is set, the UF/BF ratio display changes from green to red.

| Post | | parin (0 | Trea | tment | 5 | 2 | 120 90 Filtrate b | ag change |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|------------|---|---|-------------------|--|
| ** () 30 ∞ | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate ^{mi/h} 2000 | | | | | Blood flor milimin 100 |
| 0 | Heparin mith OFF | Ca dose mmol/I fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmoVI blood 5, 0 | | | | | UF/BF 17% |
| | Balancing i 0.30 | Treatment time h.min 02:09 | | | | | | |
| nmHg -100 | - Increase - Read he | d risk of clotting lp text! | UF/BF rat | tio > 20 % | | | 2 | G |
| 45 750 | | | | | | | | bag chan Citrate bag chan |
| 45 750 mmg50 | 5528 | | Cor | ifirm | | | | bag chan Citrate bag chang Treatmen interrupto Care |

If this message is simply confirmed with the **Confirm** button, this indicates that the operator accepts this imbalance, along with the possible resultant clotting in the filter and tubing system.

It is advisable to correct this imbalance by changing the parameters.

5.9 Ratio of calcium flow to filtrate flow

The Ca flow is calculated by the system as a function of the filtrate flow (sum of the dialysate flow, substituate flow, net UF rate, citrate flow and Ca flow), or "filtrate" for short, the set Ca dose, and the concentration set in the Setup for the Ca solution being used. The calcium flow is limited by the control range of the calcium pump.

Control range of the Ca pump: 1-100 ml/h.

If the settings of the various different flow rates in combination with the required calcium dose result in a calcium flow rate that is outside the pump control range, a message will be displayed.

In this case, the operator must adjust the filtrate flow accordingly, by modifying the dialysate and/or substituate flow and, if necessary, altering the calcium dose.



Note

If the modifications performed are inadequate for bringing the calcium flow rate back within the control range of the calcium pump, the message will be repeated after some seconds.

If a calcium flow rate message is ignored and simply confirmed, the calcium pump will be operated at the maximum or minimum possible rate, depending on whether the calcium flow is too high or too low.

The message will then be repeated after no more than 2 minutes.

5.10 Ratio of citrate flow to blood flow

The citrate flow rate is calculated by the system depending on the set citrate dose, the set blood flow, and the concentration of the citrate solution used (defined in the Setup), and is limited by the control range of the citrate pump.

Control range of the citrate pump: 10-600 ml/h

If the initial settings result in a citrate flow outside the pump control range, a message will be displayed.

In this case, the operator must adjust the blood flow or, if necessary, alter the citrate dose to continue treatment.



Note

If the modifications performed are inadequate for bringing the citrate flow rate back within the control range of the citrate pump, the message will be repeated after some seconds.

If a citrate flow rate message is ignored and simply confirmed, the citrate pump will be operated at the maximum or minimum possible rate, depending on whether the citrate flow is too high or too low.

The message will then be repeated after no more than 2 minutes.

5.11 Ratio of plasma rate to blood flow



Note

High plasma rates in combination with low blood flow rates may lead to an inadequate concentration of blood in the haemofilter (massive increase of the TMP). This concentration of the blood depends on the respective filter used. For this reason, there is a general risk of haemolysis and clotting in the capillaries.

To avoid this reaction, the plasma rate can only be set to a maximum of 30 % of the blood flow.

5.12 Pressure deviation messages

5.12.1 Resetting the alarm limit windows



alarm limit window. An audible tone is emitted. The system is stopped.

The actual pressure value lies outside the

> Press **Confirm** to continue with the treatment.

Press OK to reset all the alarm limit windows.

The size and position of the limit value windows will be applied. If the alarm limit windows are not reset, this message will erase itself, and the previous alarm limit windows will be kept as they were.



5.12.2 Reducing the access pressure

| CVVHD | F Her | arin (0 | Treatment | <u></u> | 120 90 60 30 0 min | If a low appears pressure clarm appure due to |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|--|---|--|---|--|
| 00 300 | Net UF rate mith 10 Heparin | Substituate mi/h 1000 Ca dose | Dialysate mith 2000 Citrate dose | | Blood flow milmin 100 + UFAFF 725 | an occlusion of the catheter or needle (suction to the vessel wall), the access pressure can be relieved automatically. |
| 300 | OFF Balancing | 1.7 Treatment time h.min | 5.0 | | | Press the Reduce key to start the pressure reduction. |
| | Press "F | Lcc Reduce" to begin Access pressu Reduce | ow access pressur | e alarm ease catheter or cannula suc Confirm | tion! | If the pressure has already been equalised due to the blood pump stopping, the Confirn button can be pressed to continue treatmen |
| CVVHD Post | F Her Net UF rate | ent IPEATME PADAMETI CO Substituate milh 1000 | Treatment Dialysate mih 2000 | ANIOS TREATMANT DO | HESTORIES SSSTEM PARAMETERS 120 60 60 30 0 mm Filtrate bag change Blood flow minim 100 | After making sure the access line is free of air, start the pressure reduction by pressing the Confirm button. |
| -300 | Heparin Mith OFF Balancing | Ca dose mmol/l fitrate 1.7 Treatment | Citrate dose mmotil blood 5.0 | | + UF/8F 175 - | Press Cancel to cancel the process. |
| 0 | 0.30 | 02:09 Prepare for | pressure reduction | on in access line | | |
| EL | - Check th - Connect | ere is no air in th access line to pa | ne access line atient properly | | | |

| Post | DF Her | parin <u>(0</u> | Treatment | 5 | 2 | 120 90 ea | g change |
|--|---|--|--|-------------------------------|----|-----------|---|
| m () 300 | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate ^{mith} 2000 | | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| | Heparin Mith OFF | Ca dose mmol/I fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmoVI blood 5.0 | | | | UF/BF 17% |
| | Balancing i 0.30 | Treatment time h.min 02:09 | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | - Blood ha - Actual bl - Check ca | Pressure as been delivered ood flow rate ma atheter position i | e reduction active if d back to the patient hy deviate from value display f necessary | n access II | ne | • | Cd Bag change |
| | - Blood ha - Actual bi - Check ca | Pressure as been delivered ood flow rate ma atheter position i | e reduction active i d back to the patient ny deviate from value display f necessary | n access II | ne | 2 | Ca bag change Citrate bag change |
| -100 Pre-F 0 750 | - Blood he - Actual bi - Check ci | Pressure as been delivered ood flow rate ma atheter position i | e reduction active i d back to the patient y deviate from value display f necessary Pressure reduction Cancel | n access li ^{red} | ne | 2 | Ca bag change Catrate bag change Freatment interrupted |
| nnning 100 Pre-F 0 750 nnning -50 | - Biood ha - Actual bi - Check ca | Pressure as been delivered lood flow rate ma atheter position i | e reduction active i back to the patient ny deviate from value display frecessary Pressure reduction Cancel | n access li ^{red} | ne | 2 | Ca Bag change Cdrade Bag change Interrupted Care |

Treatment is resumed when the pressure reduction has been completed.

The process can be cancelled at any time by pressing **Cancel**.

5.13 Message "Air detected downstream of the bubble catcher"

5.13.1 Before beginning deaeration procedures



Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

If deaeration procedures are not performed properly, this can lead to air infusion.

- Deaeration procedures must always be carried out in accordance with the instructions displayed by the device. The operator is responsible for following the instructions correctly.
- In addition, observe the following when performing deaeration procedures:
 - Read the detailed descriptions of the messages by pressing the ? button in each case.
 - If the return pressure exceeds 40 mmHg, the pressure must first be reduced at the bubble catcher with the aid of a syringe until the device displays the next message with further instructions.
 - While deaeration procedures are in progress, the blood flow rate is automatically lowered to 50 ml/min. To speed up the process of purging air pockets and microbubbles from the tubes, the blood flow rate can be raised as necessary.

5.13.2 Air detected



If air is detected in the return line downstream of the bubble catcher, this is indicated by an audible tone and a screen message. Balancing is switched off. The blood pump is stopped.

> Press **Confirm** to confirm that you have followed the instructions in the message.

5.13.3 Deaeration procedures

| CVVHI Post | DF Her | parin <u>(0</u> | Trea | tment | 5 | 2 | 120 90 e Filtrate ba | ag change |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|------------|----------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| m C | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate ^{mi/h} 2000 | | | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| | Heparin Mith OFF | Ca dose mmol/I fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmoVI blood 5.0 | | | | | UF/BF 17% |
| | Balancing I 0.30 | Treatment time h.min 02:09 | | | | | | - |
| nvitig -100 Pre-F 0 750 | ▲ | | Access line | Patient di | ISCONNEC | ted? to NaCI solut | lon? | Cd bag change |
| annitig -50 | Cor | ıtirm 💙 | | | | | | Care |
| TREATMENT OPTIONS PR | PARATION PAT | | HT TREA | TMENT | MERUS | TREATMENT | HISTOPHES | STSTEM PARAMETERS |

Press Confirm in the confirmation prompt.

| CVVHI Post | DF Her | oarin (0 | Treatr | nent | 5 | 2 | 120 90 e Filtrate ba | 0 30 0 min Ig change |
|----------------------------------|--|---|--|-----------------------------------|----------------------|-----------|-------------------------|---|
| m () | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Diałysate m⊮h 2000 | | | | | Blood flov milimin 100 |
| 0 | Heparin mith OFF | Ca dose mmol/l fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmoW blood 5, 0 | | | | | UF/BF 17% |
| 70 sco | Balancing 1 0.30 | Treatment time humin 02:09 | | | | | | - |
| 0 776-F 0 750 6 7769 | - Insert sy - Reduce i - Close cla | F ringe in Luer loc return pressure i imp and remove | Return press k connector of bub until new message syringe | ure too ble catcher appears | high and open cla | mp | | Cá bag chang Cáratc bag chang Tréatment interrupte Care |
| CATMENT PL | EPARATION PAT | TENT TREATME | NT ERS TREATM | IENT | MERUS | TREATMENT | HISTOPJES | STSTEM |

This message appears if the return pressure exceeds 40 mmHg.

 \succ Follow the instructions.

The next message appears automatically as soon as the return pressure has fallen below 40 mmHg.



 Press Start to push the air out into the NaCl solution.

The blood pump is running at 50 ml/min.

| Post | DF Heparin | | CVVHDF Heparin Treatme | | Treatment | 5 | 120 90 e Filtrate ba | te bag change | |
|----------------|------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------|---|-------------------------|---------------|--|
| m 🗘 | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Dialysate ^{mi/h} 2000 | | | Blood flov milmin 100 | | | |
| 0 | Heparin Mith OFF | Ca dose mmol/l fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmoVI blood 5.0 | | | UF/BF 17% | | | |
| | Balancing I 0.30 | Treatment time h.min 02:09 | | | | | | | |
| 0 mmHg -100 | | Air is bein | eck there is no air in the r | to NaCl solutio | on 🕐 | | | | |
| Pre-F 0 750 | | | Blood nump | | | Ca bag change Cidrate bag change | | | |
| Pre-F 0 750 | 2701 | | Blood pump Stop | | | Cal bag change bag change Treatment interrupted Gare | | | |

Blood pump stops automatically after 100 ml.

The blood pump can also be stopped before reaching the 100 ml by pressing the **Stop** button, if the operator can no longer see any air in the system.

| Post | | <u>(0</u> | Treatment | 5 | 2 | Filtrate bag | change |
|---------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|------------------------------|
| m () 0 300 | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mbh} 1000 | Dialysate mi∕h 2000 | | | | Blood flow milimin 100 |
| 0 | Heparin Mith OFF | Ca dose mmol/l fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmoVI blood 5.0 | | | | UF/BF 17% |
| 40 sco | Balancing 1 0.30 | Treatment time htmin 02:09 | | | | | |
| Pre-F | | ls th | ne return system f | ree of air? | | • | Ca bag chang |
| 0 750 | | | | | | | Citrate bag chang |
| nmHg -50 | 2703 Y | es | | C | No | | Gare |
| | | - | | | | | |
| REATMENT PRE | EPARATION PA | TIERT TREATM | TREATMENT | MEHUS | TREATMENT | HISTORIES | STSTEM |

CLARIDE

Press Yes to confirm that the system is free of air.

Or

40 90 0 min li

 Press No to continue removing any remaining air bubbles.
 The previous message is automatically displayed.

| CVVHE Post | DF Her | parin <u>(0</u> | Treat | ment | 5 | 2 | 120 90 e Filtrate ba | ag change |
|---------------------|------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|-----------|------------|------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| m () 0 | Net UF rate | Substituate ^{mi/h} 1000 | Diatysate ^{mi/h} 2000 | | | | | Blood flow milmin 100 |
| 0 | Heparin Mith OFF | Ca dose mmol/I fitrate 1.7 | Citrate dose mmoVI blood 5,0 | | | | | UF/BF 17% |
| | Balancing I 0.30 | Treatment time h.min 02:09 | | | | | | |
| nming -100 Pre-F | | Conr | Connec | t patient | o patient! | | | Ca bag change |
| 0 750 | | | Trea | tment | | | | Citrate bag change treatment |
| nmHg -50 | 2705 | - | Con | linue | | | | Care |
| REATMENT PRO | EPARATION PA | TIERT TREATME PARAMET | BIT TREAT | IMENT | MEHUS | TREATMENT END | HISTOPHES | SYSTEM |

- \succ Connect the patient.
- Press the Continue button to resume the treatment.

The blood pump will run at the rate set previously.

 Check the blood pump rate and adjust it as necessary.

5.14 Message "Microbubbles detected downstream of bubble catcher"

5.14.1 Before removing the microbubbles



Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

> While bypassing the pressure monitoring system, the operator is responsible for the patient's safety.



Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

If deaeration procedures are not performed properly, this can lead to air infusion.

- Deaeration procedures must always be carried out in accordance with the instructions displayed by the device. The operator is responsible for following the instructions correctly.
- In addition, observe the following when performing deaeration procedures:
 - Read the detailed descriptions of the messages by pressing the
 button in each case.
 - If the return pressure exceeds 40 mmHg, the pressure must first be reduced at the bubble catcher with the aid of a syringe until the device displays the next message with further instructions.
 - While deaeration procedures are in progress, the blood flow rate is automatically lowered to 50 ml/min. To speed up the process of purging air pockets and microbubbles from the tubes, the blood flow rate can be raised as necessary.

5.14.2 Microbubbles detected



Note

The message can be bypassed up to 3 times in the course of a treatment, by pressing **Continue**. If microbubbles continue to be detected, deaeration procedures must be performed.



If microbubbles are detected in the return line downstream of the bubble catcher, this is indicated by an audible tone and a screen message.

If there are no microbubbles to be seen, press the Continue button.

Or

- If there are microbubbles, follow the instructions and press Confirm when you have finished.
- Perform deaeration procedures (see chapter 5.13.3 on page 5-15).

5.15 Blood leak



Warning

Risk for the patient due to haemolysis or blood loss / risk of blood loss due to bypassed blood leak detector

When the blood leak safety system is bypassed, monitoring for haemolysis or blood loss is deactivated temporarily or for the entire treatment.

- > In this case, the operator is responsible for the patient's safety.
- Especially when treating permanently haemolytic plasma, look for additional dark colouration in the plasma circuit in the event of a blood leak.



Note

If the message **Blood leak detected** is pending, the treatment option TPE allows you to deactivate the safety system. This means that monitoring for haemolysis and blood leaks is cancelled for the duration of the current treatment. The safety system is reactivated when the device is switched on again (see chapter 4.6.15 on page 4-103).



If the blood leak detector (yellow) detects blood in the filtrate line, this is indicated by an audible tone and a screen message. Balancing is switched off. All pumps are stopped.

Press the Bypass button to continue treatment. The bypass time for the blood leak

detector message is 2 minutes. 1 minute, in the case of a massive blood leak.

Read the help text and follow the instructions. Terminate the treatment if necessary.

5.16 Power failure (mains power failure)

5.16.1 During preparation

• Tubing system not yet mounted

If a power failure occurs before the tubing system has been mounted, the device will shut down without delay.

• Tubing system is mounted

The **Mains power failure** message will be displayed. The system is stopped completely.

When power is restored, the message **Continue preparation** must be confirmed by pressing the **Confirm** button.

5.16.2 During treatment



Note

If the battery test detected an incompletely charged battery, emergency operation following a power failure may be even more restricted than usual.

The Mains power failure message will be displayed.

An audible tone is emitted (without delay). Balancing is switched off. The blood pump is running. Anticoagulation is switched on. The heater is switched off.

If the blood pump is running, emergency operation is possible for a maximum of 15 minutes.

The message is repeated every 2 minutes and must be confirmed by pressing the **Confirm** button.

When power is restored, the system will start automatically.

When the 15 minutes have expired, or if the battery has less than minimum power remaining, the blood pump is stopped and cannot be started again until power is restored.

After a further 5 minutes, or if the minimum battery power is depleted even further, the device will shut down.

In this case, terminate the treatment with manual blood reinfusion, if necessary (see chapter 5.18 on page 5-22).

5.17 Display failure



Screen goes dark or menu buttons no longer respond.

Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a device malfunction

Treatment cannot be performed safely in the event of a display failure, as the device cannot be operated any longer.

- Press the Stop Pumps button (red). The pumps will be stopped.
- Perform a manual blood reinfusion (see chapter 5.18 on page 5-22).

5.18 Manual blood reinfusion



Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

If the manual blood reinfusion is not performed properly, this can lead to air infusion.

- The following must be observed when performing a manual blood reinfusion:
- Turn the emergency operation hand crank of the blood pump only in the direction indicated by the arrow, to avoid the risk of air infusion via the access line.
- Visually check that return line is free of air, to avoid the risk of air infusion.



Warning

Risk of blood loss and risk of air embolism as a result of manual blood reinfusion

The instructions for performing a manual blood reinfusion must be strictly followed.



- Disconnect the access line from the patient and connect it to the NaCl solution. Break the cone, if necessary.
- Remove the access and return lines from their respective line occlusion clamps.
- > To return the blood to the patient, use the hand crank integrated in the pump rotor.
- Turn only clockwise, as shown on the rotor.
- Keep visually checking that the tube is free of air.

5.19 Manually opening the pressure measurement units



Warning

Risk of blood loss as a result of damaged tubing systems

Before manually opening the pressure measurement units, the pressure in the tubing system will need to be reduced at the bubble catcher, with the aid of an empty syringe.

The pressure measurement units will need to be manually opened to remove the tubing system in the following situations:

- Power failure and empty battery
- Defective pneumatics

In this case, terminate the treatment with manual blood reinfusion, if necessary (see chapter 5.18 on page 5-22).

Requirements

- Syringe
- Emergency venting set
 Adapter
 Check valve



- Use the adapter to connect an empty syringe to the Luer lock connector on the rear of the device.
- Repeatedly build up pressure with the aid of the syringe, until the pressure measurement units open.

6 Cleaning / disinfection



Warning

Risk of cross-contamination as a result of insufficient disinfection

Risk of contamination as a result of insufficient disinfection

There is a risk of spreading germs.

- A surface disinfection must always be performed after each treatment.
- Disinfections of the device must be performed according to the instructions in the Instructions for Use. If unsuitable procedures are followed, effective disinfection or cleaning is not possible.
- Only the disinfectants and cleaning agents listed in chapter 6 must be used.

6.1 Surface cleaning / surface disinfection

Switch the device off and disconnect it from any external power sources before cleaning and disinfection. A surface disinfection must always be performed after each treatment. Make sure that the area around sensors and actuators is clean to avoid an impairment of the functions.

Dirt, for example, blood and filtrate, must be removed immediately with a disposable paper towel dampened with disinfectant. The surface must then be disinfected a second time by wiping or spray disinfection. Do not use any sharp objects for cleaning.

6.1.1 **Cleaning the display**



- > Press the **monitor symbol** on the **Preparation** button for approximately 3 seconds. This "deactivates" the display.
- \succ Clean the display.



Note

The "deactivated" display will automatically become active once more as soon as a message is displayed.

| CVVH | DF He | parin | т | reatment | 5 | - | Filtrate I | eo 30 0 min |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|-----------|--------|---------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| â ¢ 30 ∞ | Net UF rate | Substituate mith 1000 | Dialysate | | | | | Blood flow Intrin 100 |
| | Heparin ^{mith} 2.0 | | | | | | | UF/BF 16% |
| 40 500 | Balancing L 0.03 | Treatment time humin 00:05 | | | | | | _ |
| | Pressure / alarm t | listory Naxt oper | rater action | | | | - Access | |
| mitig -100 Pre-F | 900 | 1 | | | | | Pre-F Fitrate Thip | |
| 45 750 | 0- -100- -200- -300- | | | | | | | Switch to predilution |
| | | 12.45 21.11. | 13.00 | | 0 | 0 | | Interrupted |
| mmHg -50 | To activate the so | creen, press the button | for 1 secondl | | _ | | | Care |
| | | TENT TREATMET | | TREATMENT | MEHIUS | TREATME | NT HISTORIES | SYSTEM |

> Press the **monitor symbol** on the Preparation button for approximately 1 second.

This "reactivates" the display.

6.1.2 **Detachable device components**

The following device components can be detached for easier cleaning:

- Pump rotors (blood pump, dialysate pump, substituate pump, filtrate _ pump)
- Scale trays _

6.2 Disinfectants and cleaning agents

| | The following disinfectants have been tested for use on the device. The recommended applied concentrations correspond to the specifications of the manufacturers of the disinfectants at the time of publishing these Instructions for Use. Always check the application concentration against the current product information of the disinfectants. |
|-----------------|--|
| Incidin Extra N | Active substance base: aldehyde-free preparation Disinfection type: wipe disinfection Applied concentration: 1 % in water Acting time: 15 min |
| ClearSurf | Active substance base: cationic surfactants Disinfection type: wipe disinfection Applied concentration: 0.5 % in water Acting time: 60 min Applied concentration: 1 % in water Acting time: 15 min |
| ClearSurf Wipes | Ready-to-use wipes Active substance base: cationic surfactants Disinfection type: wipe disinfection Applied concentration: 1 % in water Acting time: 15 min |
| Freka-NOL | Active substance base: ethanol Disinfection type: wipe disinfection Applied concentration: undiluted Acting time: 1 min Recommended use: Freka-WIPES disposable cloths soaked with Freka-NOL in their dispenser. |

7 Functional description

7.1 Device functions

| Extracorporeal blood circuit | The device features a pump-controlled extracorporeal blood circuit. The extracorporeal blood circuit is monitored during treatment. |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Balancing | Roller pumps are used to convey the filtrate, substituate, dialysate, plasma, and rinsing solutions, depending on the procedure. The balancing is gravity-controlled using integrated scales with which each of the fluids necessary for a treatment are weighed. The two integrated heaters reliably control the set treatment temperature, even at high flow rates. |
| Handling | The operating concept with its clear menu structure allows for easy operation. Treatment parameters and menu buttons are displayed on a large screen. The device is operated with a touchscreen, e.g., for selecting fields displayed on the screen. |
| Functional test | As soon as it is switched on, the device performs an automatic functional test of all operating, display, monitoring, and alarm functions to ensure their proper operation. Some of these tests are repeated at intervals during treatment. |
| Regional citrate anticoagulation | The integrated citrate pump permits a continuous regional anticoagulation of the patient's blood in the extracorporeal blood circuit by infusing a citrate solution into the access line. |
| | During a Ci-Ca treatment a corresponding amount of calcium is removed from the patient's blood. For this reason, a calcium substituate is infused into the return line by the integrated calcium pump. |

7.2 Description of therapies

7.2.1 Continuous renal replacement therapy

| Indication | The different continuous renal replacement therapies (CRRT) can be indicated whenever the removal of urinary excreted substances is required in addition to volume removal. This also applies if electrolyte imbalances or disorders of the acid-base balance are to be corrected. |
|-----------------|---|
| Vascular access | The CRRT therapies use a veno-venous vascular access, i.e., blood is both removed from and, after treatment, reinfused into a vein of the patient. Usually a large-bore central venous double-lumen catheter is used for the vascular access. |

| | CRRT types | Continuous haemofiltration (CVVH) can be performed as predilution CVVH (Pre CVVH for short) or as postdilution CVVH (Post CVVH for short). In addition, the device also supports CVVH with both pre-filter and post-filter dilution (Pre-Post CVVH for short). |
|---------|------------------------------------|---|
| | | Continuous veno-venous haemodialysis (CVVHD) is a further option. |
| | | Finally, the device offers the possibility of a combined haemofiltration and haemodialysis procedure (CVVHDF). Depending on where the substituate is infused into the extracorporeal circuit, there are two types of CVVHDF procedure (Pre CVVHDF and Post CVVHDF for short). |
| | | The type of CRRT procedure and the patient-specific parameters are individually prescribed by the attending physician in each case. |
| | Effectiveness of CRRT therapies | As for intermittent dialysis procedures, the effectiveness of a CRRT therapy depends on the molecular weight of the solutes that need to be removed. The prescription parameters are specific to each treatment procedure, and directly influence the effectiveness of the treatment. Solute clearance must result from the diffusion or convection mechanisms applied, or a combination of both. |
| | | The main prescription parameters for a CRRT treatment are as follows: Blood flow Dialysate flow Ultrafiltration goal or continuous net UF rate Substituate flows, for haemofiltration or haemodiafiltration Dialyser attributes (e.g., the effective surface area and the dialyser mass transfer coefficient, among other attributes) |
| | Clotting risk in CRRT therapies | The risk of clotting in the extracorporeal blood circuit differs according to the individual CRRT procedures. With a diafiltration procedure using postdilution, there is a haemoconcentration of the blood at the filter outlet, depending on the ratio of the filtrate flow to the blood flow and on the patient's haematocrit. This is assumed to be the reason for the shorter service lives of the filters in Post-CVVH compared to Pre-CVVH. |
| 7.2.1.1 | СVVН | |
| | Post CVVH | Postdilution means that the "substituate" or replacement fluid is not infused into the extracorporeal blood circuit until after the filter, i.e., after the ultrafiltrate has been removed. As a consequence, the blood at the filter outlet has a higher haemoconcentration (higher concentration of cells and proteins). This can increase the risk of clotting in the extracorporeal blood circuit. To avoid a critical haemoconcentration, the filtration fraction should not be set at more than 30 %, relative to the blood flow rate and taking the treatment parameters determined by the physician into account. A filtration fraction > 20 % is always displayed on the device. |

Pre CVVHPredilution means that the substituate is infused into the extracorporeal
blood circuit before the blood reaches the filter, thus reducing the risk of
a critical haemoconcentration. However, the disadvantage of this
procedure is that the blood in the filter is diluted, which leads to a lower
clearance of toxins per litre of ultrafiltrate than with Post-CVVH. If the
same volume of substituate is used predilution is less effective than
postdilution. The disadvantage caused by this dilution can be reduced
by increasing the blood flow rate. Alternatively, It is always possible to
select a different CRRT therapy.Pre-Post CVVHPre CVVH + Post CVVH => Pre Post CVVH
This reduces the disadvantages and combines the advantages of the
separate procedures. Depending on the application conditions, the
treatment can thus be optimised.





- 3 Filter
- 4 Fill level detector
- 5 Optical detector
- 6 Air bubble detector
- 7 Line occlusion clamp (blue)
- 8 Scale
- 9 Filtrate
- 10 Filtrate pump
- 11 Blood leak detector (yellow)
- 12 Substituate pump
- 13 Heater (white)
- 14 Substituate
- 15 Scale
- 16 Postdilution port
- **17** Predilution port

Treatment data

| СVVН | Min. | Max. | Resolution | Unit |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|------|------------|--------|
| Blood flow | 0 | 500 | 10 | ml/min |
| Net UF rate | Off / 10 | 990 | 10 | ml/h |
| Continuous heparin administration | Off / 0.5 | 25 | 0.1 | ml/h |
| Anticoagulation bolus | Off / 0.1 | 5 | 0.1 | ml |
| Substituate | 600 | 4800 | 10 | ml/h |
| Temperature | Off / 35 | 39 | 0.5 | °C |

Fig.: Pre-Post CVVH flow diagram



- 18 Postdilution port
- **19** Predilution port

Treatment data

| Pre-Post CVVH | Min. | Max. | Resolution | Unit |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|------|------------|--------|
| Blood flow | 0 | 500 | 10 | ml/min |
| Net UF rate | Off / 10 | 990 | 10 | ml/h |
| Continuous heparin administration | Off / 0.5 | 25 | 0.1 | ml/h |
| Anticoagulation bolus | Off / 0.1 | 5 | 0.1 | ml |
| Predilution substituate | 600 | 4800 | 10 | ml/h |
| Postdilution substituate | 600 | 4800 | 10 | ml/h |
| Temperature | Off / 35 | 39 | 0.5 | °C |

7.2.1.2 CVVHD

With CVVHD, the blood is purified mainly through dialysis. In addition to solute clearance through diffusion, which is the main process for removing toxins in this case, a certain amount of clearance through convection also takes place within the filter, by volume removal. Under typical CRRT conditions, where the blood flow is considerably higher than the dialysate flow, an almost complete saturation of the dialysate with toxins of a low molecular weight, such as urea and creatinine, can normally be expected. The efficiency of a CVVHD procedure is therefore comparable with that of a Post CVVH procedure. As the speed of diffusion is relative to the molecular weight, the full saturation of the dialysate with larger, so-called middle-molecular weight solutes may not be achieved, depending on the blood and dialysate flow rates set. The clearance rate achieved for these substances is thus lower than with Post CVVH (if the same dialysate and substituate quantities are used). This disadvantage of CVVHD can be compensated at least partially through the use of filters with a large active surface and High-Flux membranes. The advantage of CVVHD lies in the possibility of setting a lower blood flow than in Pre-CVVH and Post-CVVH.

Fig.: CVVHD flow diagram



Treatment data

| СVVHD | Min. | Max. | Resolution | Unit |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|------|------------|--------|
| Blood flow with heparinisation | 0 | 500 | 10 | ml/min |
| Net UF rate | Off / 10 | 990 | 10 | ml/h |
| Blood flow with Ci-Ca anticoagulation | 0 | 200 | 10 | ml/min |
| Citrate dose | 2 | 6 | 0.1 | mmol/l |
| Calcium dose | 0 | 3 | 0.1 | mmol/l |
| Continuous heparin administration | Off / 0.5 | 25 | 0.1 | ml/h |
| Anticoagulation bolus | Off / 0.1 | 5 | 0.1 | ml |
| Dialysate | 600 | 4800 | 10 | ml/h |
| Temperature | Off / 35 | 39 | 0.5 | °C |

7.2.1.3 CVVHDF

| Combination of the basic therapies | These basic therapies can be combined in pairs: |
|------------------------------------|--|
| | Pre CVVH + CVVHD => Pre CVVHDF |
| | Post CVVH + CVVHD => Post CVVHDF |
| | This reduces the disadvantages and combines the advantages of the separate procedures. Depending on the application conditions, the treatment can thus be optimised. For example, Post CVVHDF makes it possible to select the highest possible filtrate flow relative to the achievable blood flow and still keep haemoconcentration in the filter to within acceptable limits. The dialysis component of a Post CVVHDF procedure further increases the treatment efficiency, without additional |

blood flow requirements, as the filtration fraction is not affected by this.



Fig.: Post CVVHDF (Ci-Ca) flow diagram

Legend

- 1 Line occlusion clamp (red)
- 2 Blood pump
- 3 Filter
- 4 Fill level detector
- 5 Optical detector
- 6 Air bubble detector
- 7 Line occlusion clamp (blue)
- 8 Scale
- 9 Filtrate
- 10 Filtrate pump
- **11** Blood leak detector (yellow)
- **12** Substituate pump
- 13 Heater (white)
- 14 Substituate
- 15 Scale
- 16 Dialysate pump
- 17 Heater (green)
- 18 Dialysate
- 19 Scale
- 20 Postdilution port

Fig.: Flow diagram of the different CVVHDF procedures



- 17 Heater (green)
- Postdilution port 18
- 19 Predilution port

| Treatment | data |
|-----------|------|
|-----------|------|

| CVVHDF | Min. | Max. | Resolution | Unit |
|--|-----------|------|------------|--------|
| Blood flow with heparinisation | 0 | 500 | 10 | ml/min |
| Net UF rate | Off / 10 | 990 | 10 | ml/h |
| Blood flow with Ci-Ca anticoagulation | 0 | 200 | 10 | ml/min |
| Citrate dose | 2 | 6 | 0.1 | mmol/l |
| Calcium dose | 0.1 | 3 | 0.1 | mmol/l |
| Continuous heparin administration | Off / 0.5 | 25 | 0.1 | ml/h |
| Anticoagulation bolus | Off / 0.1 | 5 | 0.1 | ml |
| Substituate | 600 | 4800 | 10 | ml/h |
| Substituate with Ci-Ca anticoagulation | 600 | 2400 | 10 | ml/h |
| Dialysate | 600 | 4800 | 10 | ml/h |
| Temperature | Off / 35 | 39 | 0.5 | °C |

7.2.2 Therapeutic plasma exchange

| Indication | Therapeutic plasma exchange (TPE) is used when pathogenic plasma components can only be removed with the highly permeable membranes of special plasma filters due to their size or specific binding to large plasma proteins, such as albumin. |
|---|--|
| | Autoimmune diseases, such as Guillain-Barré syndrome, are an example of the group of diseases for which the removal of autoantibodies by TPE is an accepted therapeutic option. |
| | In some cases, it is also attempted to supply normal plasma components with the infused replacement solution. |
| Types of TPE | A TPE can be performed by centrifugation or by membrane plasma separation. The device system supports implementation in the form of membrane plasma separation. |
| Extracorporeal blood circuit and balancing | The extracorporeal blood circuit in TPE differs only slightly from that in CRRT. The balancing circuit is basically structured the same as for Post CVVH. However, to ensure gentle warming of the replacement solution, which may be donor plasma, there are two heater bags connected in series to minimise risks due to local overheating of the plasma. |
| Plasma filters | In TPE, filters with a particularly permeable membrane are used that are permeable for all plasma components, but not the cellular components of the blood and are therefore known as plasma filters. In TPE, the plasma including the components to be removed is filtered off and a suitable replacement solution is infused using gravimetric balancing. |

| Replacement solution | Because the removed plasma contains colloido-osmotically active proteins such as albumin, usually iso-oncotic colloidal replacement solutions are used. |
|----------------------|--|
| | Frequently, an iso-oncotic human albumin solution is used. A lack of coagulation factors or other essential plasma components occurring as a result of the plasma exchange or occurring independently can be counteracted by using Fresh Frozen Plasma (FFP) in whole or in part (then preferably towards the end of treatment) as a replacement solution. |
| | In some cases, such as thrombotic thrombocytopaenic purpura (TTP, also referred to as Moschkowitz syndrome), in addition to the removal of pathological plasma components, the infusion of normal plasma components with the replacement solution is essential. In such cases, FFP is generally recommended as a replacement solution, or alternatively cryoprecipitated plasma. |
| Efficacy | In TPE, typically 1 to 2 times the plasma volume of the patient is exchanged. |
| | Because of the decrease in the plasma concentration of the substances to be removed in the course of the TPE treatment, TPE is terminated after the prescribed plasma exchange. If and as long as clinically necessary, further TPE treatments will be administered on one of the following days. |
Fig.: TPE flow diagram



Treatment data

| ТРЕ | Min. | Max. | Resolution | Unit |
|------------------------------------|-----------|-------|------------|--------|
| Blood flow | 10 | 300 | 10 | ml/min |
| Ratio of plasma rate to blood flow | 0 | 30 | 1 | % |
| Plasma | Off / 10 | 50 | 1 | ml/min |
| Continuous heparin administration | Off / 0.5 | 25 | 0.1 | ml/h |
| Anticoagulation bolus | Off / 0.1 | 5 | 0.1 | ml |
| Target volume | Off / 10 | 39990 | 10 | ml |
| Temperature | Off | On | - | - |



Warning

Risk for the patient due to heat loss via the extracorporeal blood circuit if the temperature of the plasma replacement solution is too low

Haemodynamic instability due to the reduction in core body temperature

- Preheat plasma replacement solution to at least 20 °C before treatment.
- > Conduct treatment at a room temperature of at least 20 °C.
- > Switch on heater.
- > Avoid drafts during treatment.
- > Regular monitoring of patient temperature.
- If necessary, take measures to maintain patient temperature, such as use of electric blankets.



Note

In order to avoid damage to the proteins in donor plasma, the heating power in TPE treatments has been reduced. The temperature at the insertion site depends among other things on the ambient temperature (see chapter 12on page 12-1).

7.3 Anticoagulation

Requirement for anticoagulation

When performing extracorporeal blood treatments, anticoagulation of the blood is generally required. It prevents blood-clotting in the extracorporeal blood circuit and ensures an adequate operating life of the filters used.

7.3.1 Systemic anticoagulation

Systemic anticoagulants

Different substances can be used for anticoagulation. The decision to employ unfractionated or fractionated heparin, heparinoids, direct thrombin inhibitors, or pentsaccharides is made by the attending physician on a case basis.

Integrated heparin pump for anticoagulation A heparin pump for the continuous infusion of anticoagulants is integrated in the device. This pump can also be used to administer a bolus when required. An infusion line for anticoagulants is included in the tubing system.

Fig.: Schematic of systemic anticoagulation



Legend

- 1 Line occlusion clamp (red)
- 2 Blood pump
- 3 Filter
- 4 Fill level detector
- 5 Optical detector
- 6 Air bubble detector
- 7 Line occlusion clamp (blue)
- 8 Heparin pump

7.3.2 Regional citrate anticoagulation



Warning

Risk of contamination as a result of unsuitable infusion solutions

For the treatment modes CVVHDF and CVVH, only solutions that are suitable for infusion must be used.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance

There is a risk of hypocalcaemia or hypercalcaemia.

The post-filter calcium concentration must be checked 5 minutes after switching on the Ci-Ca anticoagulation and at regular intervals afterwards.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of incorrect Ci-Ca anticoagulation and changes in the patient's acid-base balance

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance

- > Observe the instructions for taking a sample in chapter 7.
- In the event of widely varying measurement values of the electrolytes and the acid-base balance, consult a physician.

Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of incorrect Ci-Ca anticoagulation and changes in the patient's acid-base balance

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance

Check that the citrate and calcium solutions used correspond to the types selected in the Setup and shown on the screen.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance

With citrate anticoagulation, if balancing is stopped for long periods of time or interrupted too frequently, this can result in an undesirable citrate accumulation if citrate anticoagulation is continued unchanged, as the calcium flow and the filtrate flow are linked and calcium substitution is therefore also interrupted whenever the filtrate flow is interrupted.

> Keep balancing interruptions to a minimum if citrate flow continues.

7.3.2.1 Basic information on citrate anticoagulation

Regional citrate anticoagulation

In conjunction with calcium-free dialysate, exogenous citrate for regional (localised) anticoagulation can be infused into the extracorporeal blood circuit only.

| Effect of the citrate | The citrate binds the ionised calcium that is present in the blood and forms a calcium-citrate complex. The resulting reduction of the ionised calcium concentration inhibits several steps in the coagulation cascade and the activation of complements. The quantity of citrate which is inevitably infused into the body is quickly metabolised by most patients. |
|--|---|
| Limits of citrate anticoagulation | Citrate anticoagulation does not prevent blood-clotting in the extracorporeal blood circuit in all cases. The fundamental causes are complex and even divergent, depending on the underlying disease and comorbid conditions. |
| | For patients with systemic blood clot activation, e.g., HIT or antiphospholipid antibody syndrome, a systemic anticoagulation can therefore be indicated in addition to the citrate anticoagulation. |
| Mutually compatible solutions in citrate anticoagulation | The different continuous renal replacement therapies with regional citrate anticoagulation described in the literature can differ considerably, also with regard to the adaption of the treatment to the specific patient. |
| | Regional citrate anticoagulation requires mutually compatible solutions (solutions with citrate, other CRRT solutions depending on the procedure, solutions with calcium). These solutions must also be used with matching flows to minimise the risk of electrolyte balance and acid- base balance disorders. |
| | Use only approved combinations of mutually compatible solutions for regional citrate anticoagulation. |
| | The following is a specific description of the treatment therapies Ci-Ca CVVHD and Ci-Ca Post-CVVHDF of the device. |
| Differences Ci-Ca CVVHD and Ci-Ca postCVVHDF | Differing from Ci-Ca CVVHD, an additional calcium-containing, bicarbonate-buffered substituate is infused in postdilution when performing a Ci-Ca postCVVHDF treatment. The haemoconcentration at the filter outlet should, if possible, not exceed 20 %. The substituate flow can, for example, be selected as 1/6 of the blood flow (16.7 ml/min = 1000 ml/h with a blood flow of 100 ml/min). With regard to the values set on the display, this corresponds to a ratio of "10:1". |
| | If the haemoconcentration at the filter outlet exceeds 20 % due to the required Ca flow and a clinically required ultrafiltration, the substituate flow can be reduced so that this limit is not exceeded. |
| | As a result of the substituate flow, there are differences between Ci-Ca CVVHD and Ci-Ca postCVVHDF regarding the control of the acid-base balance and selecting the appropriate citrate dose. |
| Laboratory tests during citrate anticoagulation | |
| | Note |
| | It is absolutely necessary to ensure that the two measurements of the |

It is absolutely necessary to ensure that the two measurements of the ionised calcium are not mistaken for each other.

Electrolyte checks (sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, phosphate, acid-base balance) must be supplemented by close monitoring of the concentration of the systemic ionised calcium concentration and the systemic acid-base balance. Usually the same systemic blood sample can be used to determine these values.

In addition, appropriate citrate anticoagulation must be checked by determining the ionised calcium in the extracorporeal blood circuit. When performing a Ci-Ca treatment, this is checked downstream of the filter.

Immediate availability of the measurement of the systemic ionised calcium and of the acid-base balance



Note

Sample collection / systemic blood sample

the immediate vicinity of the device, so that results are directly available. For example in intensive care units, this can be done with an automatic blood gas analyser, which can also measure ionised calcium.

During the treatment, the analyser for determining the acid-base balance and the concentrations of ionised calcium must be located in

If the patient has an arterial access (e.g., for collecting blood samples from artificially ventilated patients or for invasive blood pressure measurement), the blood sample to check the systemic ionised calcium and the systemic acid-base balance should be taken there. Values which may have been measured for the control of a mechanical respiration can be used.

Alternatively, the sample can be collected on the venous side, if the patient does not have an arterial access. This must be taken into account in the interpretation of the acid-base values. Here a collection site separate from the extracorporeal blood circuit is recommended.

Alternatively, the blood sample can be taken slowly from the sampling site (red) of the access line while the blood pump is running.



Note

If the sampling site on the access line is used, it must be ensured that the blood pump is running while the sample is collected and that the blood sample is aspirated slowly to prevent citrate from being admixed by the citrate infusion.

In case of recirculation in the area of the catheter, blood which has just been returned and with it some citrate will enter into the aspirated blood. This addition of citrate leads to incorrect measurement values for the systemic ionised calcium.



Sample collection /

circuit

tests

Magnesium

Sodium

extracorporeal blood

Frequency of laboratory

Note

In situations presenting an increased risk for recirculation, e.g., reverse catheter connection or femoral catheter position, the sampling site on the access line should not be used. Unexpectedly low measurement values of the systemic ionised calcium of samples collected at this site should always be checked by measuring a separately collected systemic sample.

For a check of the ionised calcium in the extracorporeal blood circuit, the blood sample is collected from the sampling site (blue) of the return line downstream of the filter.

The systemic acid-base balance and systemic ionised calcium should be checked prior to the treatment. If there is no other clinical indication, a hypocalcaemia should be corrected before the start of the Ci-Ca treatment.

The ionised calcium downstream of the filter should be checked approximately 5 minutes after the start of the treatment to verify correct connection.



Note

If no significant reduction of the post-filter ionised calcium is detected during the first measurement performed 5 minutes after the start of the treatment, the treatment must be stopped immediately. This may be indicative of an incorrect connection, it must especially be checked that the citrate and calcium solution have not been reversed.

All three laboratory parameters must be regularly checked during the Ci-Ca treatment. The intervals necessary for these regular determinations depend on the patient's clinical situation.



Note

Whenever a situation is not clear and is possibly associated with an abnormal concentration of systemic ionised calcium or with a disturbed acid-base balance, these parameters should be checked immediately.

Since citrate forms a complex not only with calcium but also with magnesium, there is also a shift of protein-bound magnesium towards magnesium-citrate complexes. Compared with CRRT solutions commonly used for systemic anticoagulation, the use of a slightly higher magnesium concentration in the dialysate used or an additional infusion of magnesium may be indicated.

Cases of hypernatraemia have been observed in connection with some variants of citrate anticoagulation. These were caused by excessive sodium concentrations in the citrate solution used, in combination with failing to adjust the sodium concentration in the HF solution / dialysate. For this reason, the Na concentration of Ci-Ca dialysates K2 and Ci-Ca dialysates K4 has been adjusted to 133 mmol/l.

Fig.: Schematic of regional anticoagulation



Legend

- 1 Line occlusion clamp (red)
- 2 Blood pump
- 3 Filter
- 4 Fill level detector
- 5 Optical detector
- 6 Air bubble detector
- 7 Line occlusion clamp (blue)
- 8 Citrate drip counter (green)/citrate fill level detector (green)
- 9 Citrate pump (green)
- **10** Calcium pump (white)
- **11** Calcium drip counter (white)/calcium fill level detector (white)

7.3.2.2 Adequate anticoagulation in the extracorporeal blood circuit

Required citrate dose

The citrate dose is defined as the volume of citrate ions (in mmol) that is infused per litre of processed blood, for which reason its unit is that of a concentration. The citrate dose can be set within a range from 2 to 6 mmol/l.

| In many patients, the required regional anticoagulation for a C | Ci-Ca |
|---|-------|
| CVVHD is achieved with a citrate dose of 3.5 to 4.5 mmol/l. | |

With Ci-Ca postCVVHDF, the use of a higher citrate dose is recommended: here, a starting value of 5.0 mmol/l citrate dose is appropriate. This change, in comparison to Ci-Ca CVVHD, compensates for the effects of the haemofiltration component of Ci-Ca postCVVHDF on the acid-base balance and inhibits a premature increase in the concentration of ionised calcium following infusion of the calcium-containing substituate at the postdilution stage.

The citrate ion concentration of the citrate solution used is required for the calculation of the applied citrate flow from the blood flow and the set citrate dose.

| Adequate citrate | The efficiency of the citrate anticoagulation is typically checked by |
|------------------------|--|
| anticoagulation in the | determining the ionised calcium in the extracorporeal blood circuit. |
| extracorporeal blood | Lowering values to below 0.35 mmol/l of ionised calcium in the |
| circuit | extracorporeal blood circuit (downstream of the filter) is associated with |
| | only a minor risk of clotting in the extracorporeal blood circuit. For Ci-Ca |
| | postCVVHDF, lowering values slightly more has the benefit of inhibiting |
| | a premature increase in the concentration of ionised calcium following |
| | infusion of the calcium-containing substituate at the postdilution stage. |
| | |

Adjusting the citrate dose If the ionised calcium measured in the extracorporeal blood circuit is lower than the desired value, the citrate dose should be reduced. Accordingly, the citrate dose should be increased if the ionised calcium in the extracorporeal blood circuit is reduced insufficiently.

The citrate dose can be set in increments of 0.1 mmol/l. This increment serves for fine adjustment in case of a very small deviation from the target range.

After the citrate dose has been readjusted, the new setting can be checked only a few minutes later and readjusted if necessary. The extracorporeal fill volume should be completely exchanged at least once, and the required time therefore depends on the set blood flow. All kits for Ci-Ca treatments permit a representative check after 5 minutes even in case of a low blood flow of 80 ml/min.

7.3.2.3 Control of systemic ionised calcium

| Necessity of calcium substitution | During the treatment, a part of the calcium-citrate complexes as well as a part of the ionised calcium passes from the patient's blood into the filtrate and is thus removed from the patient. |
|--|--|
| | To compensate for this calcium loss, calcium solution is infused into the extracorporeal blood circuit. This is done with the calcium pump which is integrated in the device system. |
| Avoiding hypocalcemia and hypercalcemia | The substitution of calcium must be adapted to the patient's needs to avoid hypocalcemia or hypercalcemia. |
| Verification of the calcium substitution | Adequate calcium substitution is determined by regular checks of the systemic ionised calcium. |

For the collection of the blood sample to check the systemic ionised calcium, observe the instructions for taking a sample/systemic blood sample (see chapter on page 7-18).

Unless clinically contraindicated, the systemic ionised calcium values should be within the normal range.

Required calcium dose The calcium dose is defined as the volume of calcium ions (in mmol) infused per litre of filtrate produced. The Ca dose (in the display: calcium/filtrate ratio) can be adjusted for Ci-Ca CVVHD within a range of 0.0 to 3.0 mmol/l. With Ci-Ca postCVVHDF, the calcium dose equals the overall calcium infusion, i.e., the sum of calcium infused with the calcium solution and the calcium in the substituate, in relation to the filtrate flow. Unlike with Ci-Ca postCVVHDF, since it is essential that calcium is infused with the substituate. In particular, a calcium dose of 0.0 mmol/l can never be set for Ci-Ca postCVVHDF. The upper configuration threshold is identical, at 3.0 mmol/l.

Based on theoretical estimations and empirical experience, an average calcium dose of approximately 1.7 mmol/l is required to maintain the systemic ionised calcium within the normal range or within the target range prescribed by the physician. This value can, however, vary from patient to patient, and even fluctuate for the same patient during the course of treatment. Accordingly, it is necessary to verify the effect by measuring systemic ionised calcium and then adjust the calcium dose as required.

The direct coupling of the calcium dose to the filtrate flow has the effect that the calcium substitution is automatically adjusted to the efficiency of the treatment, which means, for example, that in case of an elevated calcium removal, caused by an increase of the dialysate flow, the calcium substitution is automatically increased.

In this case, steps should be taken to correct this situation manually after the appropriate control measurements. For more information on citrate accumulation (see chapter 7.3.2.5 on page 7-25).

In Ci-Ca CVVHD and Ci-Ca postCVVHDF, the concentration of the calcium solution is a major parameter when calculating the infused calcium flow from the filtrate flow and the set calcium dose. In Ci-Ca postCVVHDF, the calcium concentration of the substituate infused in postdilution is also considered in the calculation.

Adjusting the calcium dose if measured values are outside the target range If the systemic ionised calcium measured is undesirably low, the calcium dose should be increased. Accordingly, the calcium dose should be reduced in case of elevated systemic ionised calcium values. Even if the calcium dose can be adjusted in increments of 0.1 mmol/l, the effect of such a change is so low that double increments, i.e. of 0.2 mmol/l, can also be used for fine adjustment. In the event of major deviations of the measured systemic ionised calcium concentration, the calcium dose should be readjusted in even greater increments, if necessary.

Delayed effect in case of changed calcium dose



Note

Unlike changes to the citrate dose, the effect of a change to the calcium dose can be assessed only after some time has passed.

This is caused by the fact that the systemic distribution volume must first develop a new balance. Depending on the efficiency of the CRRT treatment and the height of the patient (or his/her distribution volume for calcium), first effects can already be seen after a few hours. The full effect can, however, only be assessed after approximately one day.

This must be particularly taken into account if several equivalent changes are made within short intervals because, in this case, there may be an excessive response (e.g., hypercalcemia if the calcium dose is increased repeatedly at short intervals).

High calcium dose:If the calcium dose necessary for stabilising the systemic ionised
calcium is higher than 2.1 mmol/l, this might be indicative of a citrate
accumulationaccumulationaccumulation. The device alerts the operator to this fact when setting
the respective calcium doses and suggests a measurement of the total
calcium. For more information on citrate accumulation
(see chapter 7.3.2.5 on page 7-25).

Low calcium dose: possible evidence of a clogged membrane If a calcium dose of less than 1.3 mmol/l is sufficient for the stabilisation of the systemic ionised calcium, this may be indicative of a clogged membrane with reduced permeability for calcium-citrate complexes. Apart from the reduced elimination of calcium and a correspondingly lower requirement for calcium substitution, an increased systemic infusion of citrate and, after metabolism, an alkalosis are to be expected. A combination of low requirements for calcium substitution and metabolic alkalosis can also be indicative of a clogged membrane. A clogged membrane has severely restricted functionality and must be replaced (restart treatment following replacement of the kit).

7.3.2.4 Control of the systemic acid-base balance

| Differences of the various citrate procedures | The corrective measures which can be employed to obtain a normal acid-base balance can differ considerably between the different citrate anticoagulation methods. The following describes the procedure within the Ci-Ca CVVHD and the Ci-Ca postCVVHDF treatments. |
|---|--|
| Background on the resulting acid-base balance when using citrate anticoagulation | The citrate volume that is unavoidably infused systemically is metabolised: here, for each citrate ion that is fully metabolised to carbon dioxide and water (or other non-charged substances), three protons are also metabolised in the process. This results in the production of three bicarbonate ions. If not compensated, a metabolic alkalosis would develop. |

Therefore an adapted dialysate with 20 mmol/l bicarbonate is used in Ci-Ca CVVHD and Ci-Ca postCVVHDF. This concentration is lower than that of other common CRRT solutions. Dialysis to 20 mmol/l bicarbonate leads to the removal of citrate in the filter and, to a certain extent, of bicarbonate from the blood. Viewed in isolation this removal of buffer bases would lead to metabolic acidosis.

The desired balance of buffer bases can be reached by balancing the addition of buffer bases as an effect of systemic citrate infusion and the removal of buffer bases as an effect of the dialysis against the adapted dialysate. In practice, the processes are balanced so that the systemic acid-base balance of the patient is maintained within the desired range.

The Ci-Ca postCVVHDF treatment is based on the Ci-Ca CVVHD. In Ci-Ca postCVVHDF, a calcium-containing bicarbonate-buffered haemofiltration solution is also infused in postdilution and filtration across the membrane is correspondingly increased. As the additional filtrate is formed from the citrate-containing blood, a buffer base concentration in the filtrate is typically to be expected which lies above the typical bicarbonate level (e.g. 35 mmol/l) in the substituate. (The buffer base concentration is to be understood here as the total bicarbonate concentration times a factor of 3 for the metabolism of weighted citrate concentration, and in the same way as the concentrations of other metabolisable anions, such as lactate, etc.) With this approach, the additional convective component results in more buffer bases being removed than infused - including citrate, among others. This can be compensated by increasing the citrate dose above the level required for anticoagulation in the filter, to approximately 5.0 mmol/l. Since part of the additionally infused citrate is systemically infused, this helps to equalise the buffer base balance. One positive extra effect of the increased citrate dose is that it inhibits a premature increase in the concentration of ionised calcium following infusion of the calcium-containing substituate at the postdilution stage.

Derived measures for adjusting the acid-base balance

If the patient shows signs of metabolic acidosis during the treatment, the administered citrate volume must be increased or the effective removal of buffer bases from the blood in the filter must be reduced. In Ci-Ca CVVHD and Ci-Ca postCVVHDF, this can be achieved by increasing the set blood flow (which automatically increases the citrate infusion) and/or by reducing the dialysate flow (which reduces the net removal of buffer bases from the blood). The latter approach will, however, also reduce the efficiency of the treatment. Alternatively, separate infusion of bicarbonate permits an additional administration of buffer bases without reducing the efficiency of the treatment or causing an additional citrate load on the metabolism.

With Ci-Ca CVVHD, by changing one of the two named flows by 20 %, one can theoretically expect an effect of approximately 4 mmol/l on the systemic bicarbonate concentration or base excess. Depending on the dimension of the effect intended, smaller or larger stepwise adjustments may be necessary. The proper adjusting method should be selected such that the necessary efficiency of the treatment is ensured and that the practically achievable blood flow range is taken into consideration.

For Ci-Ca postCVVHDF, almost the same applies as for Ci-Ca CVVHD. However, the additional infusion of the bicarbonate-buffered substituate has a stabilising effect on the resulting acid-base balance. For an effect on the acid-base balance, the ratio of blood to dialysate flow in Ci-Ca postCVVHDF must therefore be changed to a larger extent than in Ci-Ca CVVHD. By changing one of the two flows by 30 %, one can theoretically expect an effect of approximately 4 mmol/l on the systemic bicarbonate concentration or base excess.



Note

With Ci-Ca postCVVHDF, adjusting the blood flow – even to alter the acid-base balance – also requires adjustment of the substituate flow.

Delayed effect in case of changed blood to dialysate flow ratio



Note

Just as when changing the calcium dose, the effect of a changed blood to dialysate flow ratio can be assessed only some time after the change.

This is caused by the fact that the systemic distribution volume must first develop a new balance. Depending on the efficiency of the CRRT treatment and the height of the patient (or his/her distribution volume for buffer bases, or the essential systemic bicarbonate buffer base), first effects can already be seen after a few hours. The full effect can, however, only be assessed after approximately one day.

This must be particularly taken into account if several equivalent changes are made at short intervals, as these may cause an excessive response.

7.3.2.5 Citrate accumulation

Insufficient citrate metabolism and citrate accumulation The systemically infused citrate is usually metabolised quickly. In patients who have, or develop, a metabolic disorder for citrate, the metabolism is slower. This results in an elevated systemic citrate concentration. As the systemic citrate concentration is only measured in exceptional cases in the hospital, it is assessed indirectly by its effects.

The systemically accumulated citrate also binds calcium. As a consequence the percentage of ionised calcium in the total calcium decreases.

Generally, the shift between systemic ionised calcium and total calcium is first indicated by a drop of the systemic ionised calcium concentration, which is properly corrected by increasing the calcium dose. A calcium dose above some 2.1 mmol/l (empirically determined) which is set on the device can be indicative of a possible citrate accumulation. The device will show an appropriate message.



Note

If doses of up to 3 mmol/l of calcium per litre of filtrate are not sufficient to stabilise the systemic ionised calcium concentration, citrate accumulation must be suspected. In this case, citrate anticoagulation must be stopped immediately.

After a stabilisation of the systemic ionised calcium by an appropriate calcium substitution, the shift in the concentration ratio of total calcium to systemic ionised calcium is shown by an increased total calcium. This increase is relative to the citrate accumulation, corresponding to the calcium-citrate complexes circulating in the blood.

An increase of the concentration ratio of total calcium to systemic ionised calcium above 2.5 is cited in the literature as a sign of citrate accumulation. However, this value should not be regarded a strict limit, but as an aid to orientation.

Citrate accumulation may also cause a mild metabolic acidosis. This can, however, also be a symptom of a variety of other causes and is therefore not specific for a metabolic citrate disorder.

Alkalosis / hypercalcemia
after citrateAfter completion of the treatment, the accumulated calcium-citrate
complexes are metabolised by the patient. This may result in alkalosis
and hypercalcemia.

If clinically indicated, these risks can be reduced by continuing the CRRT treatment without citrate anticoagulation.

7.3.3 Solutions for citrate anticoagulation

Preparation

Suitable NaCl solutions are used for filling the tubing system. The citrate and calcium lines are filled with the appropriate citrate and calcium solutions.



Warning

Risk of blood loss as a result of clotting

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance due to incorrect selection of dialysate

The use of calcium-containing dialysate for a Ci-Ca treatment can lead to blood clotting and/or hypercalcaemia.

 Only use calcium-free dialysate for treatments with citrate anticoagulation.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance due to incorrect selection of substituate

The use of substituate with the wrong calcium level for a Ci-Ca treatment can lead to an electrolyte imbalance in the patient.

- Only use calcium-containing substituate for treatments with citrate anticoagulation.
- Check that the calcium solution used corresponds to the type selected in the Setup and shown on the screen.

Treatment



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance due to incorrect selection of dialysate and substituate

- After changing the treatment mode, change the solutions if necessary.
- Adjust the flow ratios of the solutions in relation to each other and in relation to the blood flow.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a reduction in body temperature

If the temperature of the citrate and calcium solutions is too low, this can lead to hypothermia in the patient.

- \succ The solutions must be at room temperature when used.
- Either select a suitable storage temperature or heat the bags to the required temperature before use.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of incorrect Ci-Ca anticoagulation and changes in the patient's acid-base balance

Risk for the patient as a result of a disorder of the electrolyte balance

Check that the citrate and calcium solutions used correspond to the types selected in the Setup and shown on the screen.

Depending on the citrate and calcium solutions used locally, the concentration of the citrate and calcium ions in the respective solutions must be stored in the Service setup menu of the device (unit: mmol/l). This is done by Technical Service personnel. This also applies to the filling volume of the storage containers used.

The stored concentrations and volumes can be viewed in the **Ci-Ca bag change** menu. These values must be confirmed on selection of citrate anticoagulation and whenever the bag change menu is used.

Citrate and calcium solutions

For Ci-Ca CVVHD and Ci-Ca postCVVHDF, the sole approved citrate solution is 4 % Na_3 citrate in each case, containing 136 mmol/l of citrate ions.

The concentration of the calcium solution used may be basically within a range from 50 to 500 mmol/l. The recommended calcium solution is one with approximately 100 mmol/l. Higher calcium concentrations lead to lower calcium flows and can increase the risk of local clot formation due to the poorer quality of intermixing that occurs at the calcium infusion site.

The citrate and calcium solutions must be suitable for infusion.



Note

Despite citrate anticoagulation, localised clotting can occur in the tubing system during the treatment. Perform regular visual checks of the blood lines, especially in the area from the venous chamber to the connection of the return line to the vascular access. If clot formations become apparent ("white bands"), replace the cassette.

Ca-containing substituate

In addition to the solutions needed for Ci-Ca CVVHD, Ci-Ca postCVVHDF will also require a calcium-containing, bicarbonate-buffered substituate. The use of a substituate of this type with 1.5 mmol/l calcium and 35 mmol/l bicarbonate is recommended.

| CRRT treatments | Citrate solution | HF solution / dialysate | Ca solution |
|------------------|--|--|---|
| Ci-Ca CVVHD | 4 % Na ₃ citrate (corresponding to 136 mmol/l citrate) 1.5 litre bag | Ci-Ca Dialysate K2, Ci-Ca Dialysate K4, Ci-Ca Dialysate K2 Plus, Ci-Ca Dialysate K4 Plus per 5 litre bag | CaCl ₂ solution in the appropriate concentration (50 to 500 mmol/l calcium ions); preferably approx. 100 mmol/l |
| Ci-Ca postCVVHDF | 4 % Na ₃ citrate (corresponding to 136 mmol/l citrate) 1.5 litre bag | Ci-Ca Dialysate K2, Ci-Ca Dialysate K4, Ci-Ca Dialysate K2 Plus, Ci-Ca Dialysate K4 Plus per 5 litre bag Additionally, a calcium- containing, bicarbonate- buffered substituate | CaCl ₂ solution in the appropriate concentration (50 to 500 mmol/l calcium ions); preferably approx. 100 mmol/l |

8 Consumables, accessories, additional equipment



Warning

Warning

Chapter 8 (see chapter 8 on page 8-1) contains a list of consumables and accessories that are suitable for use with this device and can be used safely with it.

The manufacturer cannot guarantee that other consumables and accessories than those listed in this chapter are suitable for use with this device. The manufacturer cannot guarantee that the safety and performance of the device will remain unimpaired if consumables and accessories other than those listed in this chapter are used.

If other consumables and accessories are used, their suitability must be verified beforehand. This can be done with the aid of the information in the instructions accompanying such consumables and accessories.

The manufacturer accepts no liability for damage to the device resulting from the use of unsuitable consumables or accessories.



Risk for the patient as a result of improper use of consumables

Treatment cannot be performed properly and safely if consumables are used incorrectly.

Follow the instructions that come with the consumables used.

The local service support organisation will provide information on further accessories, consumables and other additional equipment on request.

Symbols on consumables:

When using consumables, it is important to take note of the following symbols:

Single-use article Identified by the symbol:



Do not re-use.

Use-by date Identified by the symbol:



Long-term operation Identified by the symbol:



Indication of max. operating time and max. delivery volume

8.1 Consumables

8.1.1 multiFiltratePRO Treatment kits

| Product | Part number | Information |
|--|-------------|---|
| multiFiltratePRO Kit Ci-Ca [®] HD EMiC [®] 2 | F00 000 462 | multiFiltratePRO Ci-Ca [®] HD treatment cassette with Ultraflux [®] EMiC [®] 2 |
| multiFiltratePRO Kit Ci-Ca [®] HD 1000 | F00 000 463 | multiFiltratePRO Ci-Ca [®] HD treatment cassette with Ultraflux [®] AV 1000 S |
| multiFiltratePRO Kit Ci-Ca [®] HDF 1000 | F00 005 329 | multiFiltratePRO Ci-Ca [®] HDF treatment cassette with Ultraflux [®] AV 1000 S |
| multiFiltratePRO Kit HDF 1000 | F00 000 461 | multiFiltratePRO treatment cassette for HDF, HD, HF with Ultraflux [®] AV 1000 S |
| multiFiltratePRO Kit HDF 600 | F00 000 460 | multiFiltratePRO treatment cassette for HDF, HD, HF with Ultraflux [®] AV 600 S |
| multiFiltratePRO-Kit TPE P1 dry | F00 006 441 | multiFiltratePRO treatment cassette for TPE with Plasmaflux [®] P1 dry |
| multiFiltratePRO-Kit TPE P2 dry | F00 006 443 | multiFiltratePRO treatment cassette for TPE with Plasmaflux [®] P2 dry |

8.1.2 Haemofilters/plasma filters

Haemofilters

| Product | Part number | Information |
|----------------------------------|-------------|---|
| Ultraflux [®] AV 600 S | 500 736 1 | Ultraflux [®] haemofilter, steam-sterilised, 1.4 m ² surface, Fresenius Polysulfone [®] membrane, blood fill volume 100 ml |
| Ultraflux [®] AV 1000 S | 500 898 1 | Ultraflux [®] haemofilter, steam-sterilised, 1.8 m ² surface, Fresenius Polysulfone [®] membrane, blood fill volume 130 ml |

Plasma filters

| Product | Part number | Description |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|---|
| plasmaFlux [®] P1 <i>dry</i> | 500 802 1 | Plasma filter (dry on delivery), steam sterilised, 0.3 m ² surface, blood fill volume 35 ml, Fresenius Polysulfone [®] membrane |
| plasmaFlux [®] P2 <i>dry</i> | 500 803 1 | Plasma filter (dry on delivery), steam sterilised, 0.6 m ² surface, blood fill volume 67 ml, Fresenius Polysulfone [®] membrane |

8.1.3 Isotonic NaCl solutions

Suitable NaCl solutions must be used.

8.1.4 Dialysate and haemofiltration solutions

| Product | Part number | Information |
|---|-------------|--|
| Ci-Ca [®] Dialysate K2 | 968 920 1 | Calcium-free dialysate for regional citrate anticoagulation. 5 I double-chamber bag containing 2 mmol/l potassium |
| Ci-Ca [®] Dialysate K4 | F00 000 431 | Calcium-free dialysate for regional citrate anticoagulation. 5 I double-chamber bag containing 4 mmol/l potassium |
| Ci-Ca [®] Dialysate K2 <i>Plus</i> | F00 001 624 | Calcium-free dialysate for regional citrate anticoagulation, 5 I double-chamber bag containing 2 mmol/l potassium and 1.25 mmol/l inorganic phosphate |
| Ci-Ca [®] Dialysate K4 <i>Plus</i> | F00 001 625 | Calcium-free dialysate for regional citrate anticoagulation, 5 I double-chamber bag containing 4 mmol/l potassium and 1.25 mmol/l inorganic phosphate |
| multi Plus K ⁺ 2 mmol/l | 968 820 1 | Phosphate-containing bicarbonate-buffered dialysate, 5-I double-chamber bag containing 2 mmol/l potassium and 1 mmol/l inorganic phosphate |

8.1.5 Citrate solution

| Product | Part number | Information |
|----------------------|-------------|--|
| 4 % citrate solution | E2012 | Trisodium citrate solution for regional citrate anticoagulation, 1.5 I bag |

8.1.6 Disposable syringes

| Product | Part number | Information |
|------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| Fresenius Medical Care 30 ml | 5030321 | Internal diameter: 22.00 mm |
| Fresenius Injectomat 50 ml | 9000711 | Internal diameter: 28.84 mm |
| B. Braun Perfusor 50 ml | 8728844F | Internal diameter: 27.79 mm |



Note

The measurements below were taken from a number of sample items.

Fresenius Medical Care cannot be held responsible for possible changes to the syringe measurements.

| Product | Part number | Information |
|------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| B. Braun Omnifix 30 ml | 4617304F | Internal diameter: 22.04 mm |
| B. Braun Omnifix 50 ml | 4617509F | Internal diameter: 27.79 mm |
| BD Perfusion 50 ml | 300137 | Internal diameter: 27.79 mm |
| BD Plastipak 50 ml | 300865 | Internal diameter: 26.47 mm |

8.1.7 Other single-use items

| Product | Part number | Information |
|---|-------------|---|
| CAVH/D – CVVH/D dialysate connector | 501 491 1 | Adapter for connecting substituate system (with male connector) to haemofilter, e.g. for change of treatment mode |
| 2 x HF female / 4 x HF male adapter | 504 613 1 | For connecting 4 solution bags to one substituate or dialysate system |
| HF female / Luer lock female PF adapter | 501 474 1 | Adapter for connecting infusion equipment to HF tubing systems |
| HF female / Luer lock male adapter | 501 689 1 | For connecting solution bags to the substituate system |
| HF female / spike adapter | 501 635 1 | For connecting solution bags with septum to substituate systems |
| Hansen male / Luer lock male adapter | 501 688 1 | For setting up a Pre-Post CVVH treatment |
| Spike connector | 501 592 1 | Spike connector / Luer lock female |
| Spike connector vented | F00 000 520 | Spike connector vented / Luer lock female |
| Luer lock SN adapter | 502 785 1 | When using two filtrate bags |

| Product | Part number | Information |
|---|-------------|---|
| Y-adapter for filtrate bags, 2x female Luer lock / 1x male Luer lock | F00005539 | When using two filtrate bags |
| Luer Lock female adapter | 501 480 1 | For connecting 2 male Luer lock connectors |
| Luer lock male adapter | 501 477 1 | For connecting 2 female Luer lock connectors |
| Collection bag, 2000 ml | 501 509 1 | 2000 ml collection bag with female Luer lock connector |
| 10 litre filtrate bag | 502 901 1 | Filtrate collection bag with drain valve, male Luer lock connector |
| 10 litre single-use filtrate bag | 502 903 1 | Single-use filtrate collection bag with male Luer lock |
| Pressure line | 501 463 1 | Complete pressure line with filter, male Luer lock connector, 30 cm, blue |
| Forceps | 284 524 1 | For closing off lines |
| Freka-Flex transfer system | 288 901 1 | Infusion system with roller clamps and drip chamber |
| 75-cm extension | 703 001 1 | Tube extension male / female Luer lock |
| Recirculation connector | 501 597 1 | Tube adapter with 2 female Luer lock connectors and grommet |

8.2 Additional equipment

| Product | Part number | Information |
|--------------------------------|-------------|--|
| Equipotential bonding cable | M90 113 1 | Original Fresenius accessories |
| Staff call cord | M55 510 1 | Original Fresenius accessories |
| Accessory bag without contents | M41 115 1 | Original Fresenius accessories |
| Ethernet cable | M28 074 1 | Shielding: CAT5 or better Length: 3 m |
| Plasma bag holder | F40002822 | Original Fresenius accessories |

9 Installation

9.1 Connection requirements

9.1.1 Environment

The following considerations need to be taken into account for the operating environment:

- No splash water area
- Ceilings, walls, floors: smooth, liquid-tight, scrub-resistant, suitable for wet disinfection
- Ensure adequate load-carrying capacity of the floors
- Space requirements of each device approx. 1 m²
- Emergency lighting (for at least 1 hour in case of power failure)
- Distances to areas such as MRI scanner rooms

9.1.2 Power supply network

Power supply network requirements:

- The requirements specified by IEC 60364-7-710 for Group 1 rooms must be met.
- Power failures < 20 ms
- A grounding system must be installed as prescribed.
- A power socket with a protective earth connection is required.
- The line cross-section and the line lengths to the wall outlet must ensure that the voltage tolerance and the function of the protective devices is always guaranteed. Recommended line cross-section to the power socket: at least 3 x 1.5 mm² copper core for 220 V – 240 V and at least 3 x 2.5 mm² copper core for voltages of less than 220 V.
- Each electric circuit is protected from damage through fault conditions with an automatic, fast-acting circuit-breaker (recommended: 16 A at 220 V – 240 V and 20 A for voltages < 220 V).
- No more than 1 device per wall outlet and electric circuit.
- The use of power strips and extension cables is prohibited.
- Residual-current devices (RCDs) which protect against dangerous shock currents in the event of fault conditions. One residual-current device (RCD less than 30 mA) for each device or electric circuit.
- Overvoltage / lightning protection in the main and emergency power supply networks.
- An equipment bonding connection must be available for an additional equipotential bonding conductor.

9.1.3 Electrical installation

| | Warning |
|--|---|
| | Risk of injury as a result of an electric shock |
| | Without a protective earth connection, there is a risk of electric shock. |
| | Always connect the device to a power supply network with a protective earth. |
| Power supply connection | The national standards and regulations must be observed when connecting the device to the power supply network. |
| Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) | Observe during installation and start-up: (see chapter 12.5 on page 12-3) |
| Protective earth | For safety class I devices, the quality of the protective earth conductor of the installation is of particular importance. |
| Power supply cord | If the power supply cord needs to be replaced, use only the power supply cord approved by the manufacturer and listed in the spare parts catalogue. The use of additional power strips and extension cables is prohibited. |
| Equipotential bonding | Connect the equipotential bonding conductor to the rear of the device using accessories approved by the manufacturer if this is required by law at the place of installation. |
| Leakage currents | If additional equipment not listed in the Accessories chapter is connected to the device, there is a danger that the permitted leakage currents will be exceeded. |

9.2 Installation / initial start-up requirements



Note

In order to minimise the risk of using incorrect citrate or calcium containers, it is advisable to have only one container of each type (one size and one concentration in each case) available throughout the entire hospital or dialysis centre. The same citrate and calcium container settings must be made in the Setup of all the devices in the same hospital or dialysis centre.

After bringing the device from a cooler room into a warmer room, allow approximately 2 hours for the system to adjust to the ambient temperature before turning it on.

| On receipt of the device, charge the battery as follows: Use the power supply cord to connect the device to the power supply. Switch the power switch of the device to "on". Leave the power switch of the device on for 10 hours. |
|---|
| - Leave the power switch of the device of for 10 hours. |
| |

9.3 Important information on initial start-up

| For initial start-up only | The following information is only intended for the initial start-up. This information does not apply to recommissioning devices that have been taken out of service even temporarily. |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Environmental conditions | Variations in temperature during transport may cause water condensation on electrical parts. In the event of major variations in temperature, allow sufficient time for the device to adjust to the ambient temperature before start-up. |
| Qualification requirements of testers | The initial start-up must only be performed by the manufacturer's service support organisation or a person authorised by it. |
| | The initial start-up must only be performed by personnel qualified to perform the required procedures correctly based on their education, training, knowledge and experience. Furthermore, the persons performing the checks must be permitted to do so independently and without outside interference. |
| Specifications | The information contained in the Specifications chapter must be observed. |
| Documentation | The initial start-up report and detailed explanations of how to perform the procedures are described in the Service Manual. |
| | Reports are available upon request. |
| | The completion of the initial start-up must be entered in the Medical Device Register. |

10 Transport / storage



Warning

Risk of injury from a tilting device



Tilt hazard when pushing the device or leaning against it or if maximum inclination of 5° is exceeded

Lateral force exerted on the device, or if the maximum angle of inclination of 5° is exceeded, can result in the device tilting or slipping.

- > Make sure you follow the instructions for relocation and transport.
- > Ensure that the device is standing in a stable position.



Note

Never pull or push the device while holding onto the scales.

For moving the device, always use the push handles at the front and back.

The device must not be carried. Use a lift, ramp or similar to overcome level differences.

10.1 Relocation

| | After the initial start-up, a device must only be relocated inside the same building or ward. |
|-----------------------|---|
| Moving the device | The device rests on a trolley and can therefore be moved to different locations without any problems. The trolley features 4 wheels, each of which has a locking brake. The rear wheels can also be locked for pushing. |
| | Using the handles at the front and back, the device can be turned, pushed and pulled in any direction. |
| Directional stability | After locking the rear wheels into position, use the front handle to push the device before you. Look out for obstacles in your path. |
| Uneven surfaces | Level differences up to 1 cm. |



To avoid damaging or overturning the device, observe the following:

- Using the front handle, push the device slowly before you until the obstacle is reached.
- Gently push the device over the obstacle, placing one foot on the trolley bar of the device for extra support.

| Locking the brakes | Once the device has been moved to its final position for treatment, the |
|--------------------|---|
| | brakes on all 4 wheels must be locked. |

If preparation has already been started, observe the following

| Requirements for relocation | The functional test has been completed. The tubing systems (cassette) have been mounted, filled and rinsed. The treatment data has been entered. The device is in "Circulation" mode. Fold the filter holder forward. Swivel and tilt the monitor back against the device. The weights carried by the IV poles and the scales must not exceed the following values. The rear hooks on the IV poles should be used. | |
|----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| | Left IV pole | 5.5 kg |
| | Substituate / dialysate scale, each | 12 kg |
| | Right IV pole | 5.5 kg |
| Interrupting the power supply | The device can be disconnected from the power supply by pulling out the power plug. The device indicates a power failure. Press the Audio paused button to suppress the audible alarm signal for 2 minutes. The device must be relocated as fast as possible, as battery operation is only possible for a limited time. | |
| Checks after relocation | Particular attention should be paid to "Application principles". | the information in chapter 4.1 |



Warning

Risk of air embolism as a result of air in the tubing system

Risk of blood loss as a result of connection sites not closed correctly

- > Check the following after relocation:
- Make sure all screw-lock joints are properly tightened.
- Ensure that the filtrate bag hangs freely and does not touch any other objects.
- Visually check that the tubing systems (cassette) and the solution bags are not damaged or leaking and that they are properly mounted.

10.2 Transport

The device must never be transported with mounted tubing systems or with any load on the scales.

If the device needs to be transported to a location that is not within the immediate vicinity of its current location, then the relocation goes beyond the scope of the previous section. In this case, the full initial start-up procedure must be performed again at the destination.

Always transport the device in the original packaging. A device transport must only be performed by the manufacturer, or by a person authorised by the manufacturer for this purpose.

10.3 Storage

battery



Maintenance of the built-in

Note

To ensure that the internal battery is always charged and ready for use, the device must be connected to the power supply and the power switch must be set to "on".

The device must be stored upright in a well-ventilated room with low variations in temperature.

On receipt of the device, charge the battery as follows:

- Use the power supply cord to connect the device to the power supply.
- Switch the power switch of the device to "on".
- Leave the power switch of the device on for 10 hours.

If the device is not used, repeat this procedure every six months.

• Storage conditions

| Temperature | -20 °C to +60 °C |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Relative humidity | 30 % to 75 %, temporarily 95 % |
| Atmospheric pressure | 500 hPa to 1060 hPa |

10.4 Environmental compatibility / disposal

Within the EU member-states, the device must be disposed of in accordance with the "Directive on waste electrical and electronic equipment" (WEEE Directive). Also observe the applicable local regulations.

Before the device is sent off for disposal, the responsible organisation must ensure that all consumables attached to the device are removed and the device is disinfected as specified by the manufacturer (see chapter 6 on page 6-1).

Moreover, the responsible organisation must ensure that the waste disposal company is informed of the following facts before the dismantling process is begun:

- The device could still be contaminated when it is returned. Suitable safety measures must be in place for dismantling the device, including the use of personal protective equipment.
- For information on the batteries and other materials used, consult these Instructions for Use (see chapter 12.12 on page 12-17).
- Batteries must be properly disposed of in accordance with the applicable national regulations.
- The device includes electronic circuit boards and an LCD screen.
- More information will be made available by the manufacturer to waste disposal services on request.

11 Technical Safety Checks / maintenance procedures

11.1 Important information on the Technical Safety Checks / maintenance procedures

| Technical Safety Checks (TSC) | The first TSC are required before the end of the 24th month following initial start-up after delivery from the factory. All further TSC are required before the end of the 24th month following the last TSC performed. | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Maintenance procedures (MA) | The maintenance procedures (MA) are a recommendation of the manufacturer. The maintenance procedures help ensure trouble-free operation, and must be carried out for the first time before the end of the 24th month following initial start-up after delivery from the factory. All further MA should be performed before the end of the 24th month following the last MA performed. | | |
| Qualification requirements of testers | The checks must be performed by the manufacturer's service support organisation or a person authorised by it. | | |
| | The specified checks may only be performed by personnel qualified to perform them correctly based on their education, training, knowledge and experience. Furthermore, the persons performing the checks must be permitted to do so independently and without outside interference. | | |
| Specifications | The information contained in the Specifications chapter must be observed. | | |
| Documentation | The TSC, MA and detailed explanations of how to perform them are described in the Service Manual. | | |
| | Reports are available upon request. | | |
| | The completion of the TSC must be entered in the Medical Device Register. | | |
| | | | |

12 Specifications

12.1 Dimensions and weight

| Dimensions | Height: approx. 167 cm Width: approx. 65 cm Depth: approx. 69 cm (not counting filter holder) |
|------------|---|
| Weight | Weight: approx. 95 kg Safe working load: 45 kg Maximum total weight: approx. 140 kg |

12.2 Electrical safety

| | Classification according to EN 60601-1, IEC 60601-1 | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| Degree of protection against electric shock | Protection class I | | |
| Applied part | Depending on the treatment procedure, the applied part comprises the extracorporeal blood circuit, the dialysate, substituate, and plasma circuits, and all components with a permanent, conductive connection to these circuits. | | |
| Applied part type (degree of protection for the patient) | 200 to 230 V AC, 50 Hz: type CF applies 100 to 127 V AC, 50 Hz: type CF applies 100 to 127 V AC, 60 Hz: type CF applies | | |
| | 240 V AC, 50 Hz: type BF applies 200 to 240 V AC, 60 Hz: type BF applies | | |
| Defibrillator-proof applied part | The applied part is defibrillator-proof, irrespective of the single-use items used. | | |
| Degree of protection against ingress of liquids | Drip-proof | | |
| Leakage currents | according to EN 60601-1 | | |

12.3 Electric power supply

| Line voltage | 100 to 240 V AC, 50 to 60 Hz (Always go by the line voltage, frequency and current consumption information specified on the identification label attached to the device itself.) |
|--------------|---|
| | |

| Power supply connection | 16 A at 230 V, determined according to VDE 0100 Part 710 | |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| Operating current | Max. 4.4 A, (at 240 V AC) Max. 12 A, (at 100 V AC) | |
| Power supply (internal) | +24 V DC ± 5 %, 35 A short-circuit-proof 800 W total output power | |
| Power switch | All-pole, simultaneous disconnection | |
| Battery | Lead-acid battery (maintenance-free) 2 x 12 V, 7.2 Ah | |

12.4 Identification label (device marking)

12.4.1 Identification label of the device

The identification label shown is only an example. Always go by the information shown on the identification label affixed to the device itself.



12.4.2 Power label

The power label shown is only an example. Always go by the information shown on the power label affixed to the device itself.



Legend

- 1 Power supply rating
- 2 Operating current
- **3** Applied part type (degree of protection for the patient)

12.5 Information on electromagnetic compatibility (IEC 60601-1-2:2014)

Specifications refer to the requirements of IEC 60601-1-2:2014.

12.5.1 Minimum distances between radiation source and medical electrical equipment

Medical electrical devices are subject to special protective measures with regard to electromagnetic compatibility (EMC).



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a device malfunction

Portable RF communications equipment (radio equipment including its accessories such as antenna cables and external antennas) should not be used at a distance less than 30 cm (12 inches) from the device parts and cables designated by the manufacturer. Non-compliance may result in impairment in the performance of the device.

Always maintain a distance of at least 30 cm between portable and mobile RF communication devices and the device.

Portable and mobile RF communication devices can include the following sources of radiation (example devices): mobile phone, smartphone, tablet PC, cordless phone, notebook/laptop, wireless keyboard, wireless mouse, wireless speaker, wireless remote control (The device-specific wireless remote control provided by the manufacturer is not affected.)



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of a device malfunction

The use of electrical accessories and cables other than those specified in the Instructions for Use can lead to an increase in electromagnetic emissions or a reduction in electromagnetic immunity of the device.

> Only use the accessories and cables approved by the manufacturer.



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of electromagnetic incompatibility between devices

Electromagnetic interference from other devices can cause device malfunctions.

 \succ Do not operate the device in the immediate vicinity of other devices.

If operation in the immediate vicinity of other devices cannot be avoided:

> Monitor the device to verify that it is working properly.

12.5.2 Guidance and manufacturer's declaration on EMC

Electromagnetic emissions

| Guidance and manufacturer's declaration – electromagnetic emissions | | | | |
|---|---------------------|--|--|--|
| The multiFiltratePRO device is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The customer or the user of the multiFiltratePRO device should assure that it is used in such an environment. | | | | |
| Emissions test | Compliance | Electromagnetic environment – guidance | | |
| RF emissions CISPR 11 | Group 1, Class A | The multiFiltratePRO device uses RF energy only for its internal function. Therefore, its RF emissions are very low and are not likely to cause any interference in nearby electronic equipment. The multiFiltratePRO device is suitable for use in all establishments other than domestic and those directly connected to the public low-voltage power supply network that supplies buildings used for domestic purposes. | | |
| Harmonic emissions IEC 61000-3-2 | Class A | | | |
| Voltage fluctuations/flicker emissions IEC 61000-3-3 | Complies | | | |
| | | The emissions characteristics of this equipment make it suitable for use in industrial areas and hospitals. If it is used in a residential environment this equipment might not offer adequate protection to radio-frequency communication services. The user might need to take mitigation measures, such as relocating or re-orienting the equipment. | | |
Electromagnetic immunity

| Guidance and manufacturer's declaration – electromagnetic immunity | | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| The multiFiltratePRO device is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The customer or the user of the multiFiltratePRO device should assure that it is used in such an environment. | | | |
| Immunity test | IEC 60601 test level | Compliance level | Electromagnetic environment – guidance |
| Electrostatic discharge (ESD) IEC 61000-4-2 | ±8 kV contact ±15 kV air | ±8 kV contact ±15 kV air | Floors should be wood, concrete or ceramic tile. If floors are covered with synthetic material, the relative humidity should be at least 30 %. |
| Electrical fast transient/burst IEC 61000-4-4 | ±2 kV for power supply lines ±1 kV for input / output lines | ±2 kV for power supply lines ±1 kV for input / output lines | Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment. |
| Surge IEC 61000-4-5 | ±1 kV line(s) to line(s) ±2 kV line(s) to earth | ±1 kV line(s) to line(s) ±2 kV line(s) to earth | Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment. |
| Voltage dips, short interruptions and voltage variations on power supply input lines | 0 % U _T for 0.5 cycle at 0, 45, 90, 135, 180, 225, 270 and 315 degrees 0 % U _T for 1 cycle | 0 % U _T for 0.5 cycle at 0, 45, 90, 135, 180, 225, 270 and 315 degrees 0 % U _T for 1 cycle | In the event of power supply interruptions, the rechargeable battery of the multiFiltratePRO device temporarily takes over the supply for parts of the system without delay. |
| 120 01000-4-11 | 70 % U _T for 25 cycles | 70 % U _T for 25 cycles | Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment. |
| | 0 % U _T for 250 cycles (5 s) | 0 % U _T for 250 cycles (5 s) | |
| Power frequency (50/60 Hz)magnetic field IEC 61000-4-8 | 30 A/m | 30 A/m | Power frequency magnetic fields should be at levels characteristic of a typical location in a typical commercial or hospital environment. |
| Note: U _T is the a.c. m | ains voltage prior to ap | plication of the test leve | el |
| Conducted RF IEC 61000-4-6 | 3 V _{rms} 150 kHz to 80 MHz | 3 V _{rms} | |
| | 6 V _{rms} in ISM bands between 150 kHz and 80 MHz | 6 V _{rms} in ISM bands | |
| Radiated RF IEC 61000-4-3 | 3 V/m 80 MHz to 2.7 GHz | 3 V/m | |
| Note: These guidelines may not apply in all situations. Electromagnetic propagation is affected by absorption and reflection from structures, objects and people. | | | |

12.6 Operating conditions

| Operating temperature range | +15 to +35 °C |
|---|---|
| Atmospheric pressure | 700 to 1060 hPa |
| Relative humidity | 30 % to 75 %, temporarily 95 % |
| Operating altitude | Maximum operating altitude up to 3000 m The operating altitude depends on the atmospheric pressure and can vary accordingly. A lower atmospheric pressure than the minimum value specified can restrict the functions of the device and cause delays in opening the pressure measurement units. |
| Inclination during operation | Maximum angle of inclination during operation: 5° |
| IV pole load-bearing capacity | Maximum: 5.5 kg Maximum load per hook: 5.5 kg |
| Scale load capacity | Maximum: 12 kg each for scales 1 and 2 Maximum: 24 kg total for scales 3 and 4 |
| Plasma bag holder load- bearing capacity | Maximum: 8 plasma bags with a volume of 320 ml each Maximum load per hook: 2 plasma bags with a volume of 320 ml each |

12.7 Storage conditions

| Temperature | -20 °C to +60 °C |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Relative humidity | 30 % to 75 %, temporarily 95 % |
| Atmospheric pressure | 500 hPa to 1060 hPa |

12.8 External connection options



Warning

Risk of injury as a result of an electric shock

There is a risk of electric shock if the patient comes into contact with the pins or contacts of the device's connectors, whether directly or indirectly through the operator.

> Avoid touching connector pins or contacts during treatment.

| | Other, additional equipment connected to this device must verifiably comply with the applicable IEC or ISO standards (e.g., IEC 60 950-1 for information technology equipment). |
|----------------------------|--|
| | Furthermore, all device configurations must comply with the requirements for medical electrical systems (see EN 60601-1:2006 section 16 and annex I). |
| | Connecting the device to an IT network that contains components not installed and validated by the manufacturer can introduce unknown risks for patients, operators or third parties. These risks must be identified, analysed, evaluated and checked by the responsible organisation. For assistance, refer to IEC 80001-1:2010 and annexes H5 and H6 of EN 60601-1:2006. |
| | Any modifications to an IT network that has been installed and validated by the device manufacturer can introduce new risks and therefore require a repeat analysis. Especially problematic activities include: |
| | Changes to the IT network configuration |
| | Connection of additional components and devices to the IT network |
| | Removal of components and devices from the IT network |
| | Updates or upgrades of components and devices in the IT network |
| | Note that local laws take priority over the above-mentioned normative requirements. Please address any queries to the local service support organisation. |
| LAN port | Interface for data exchange. Electrically isolated by transformer. Port: RJ 45 Shielding: CAT5 or better |
| | Length: 3 m |
| RS232 port | The serial port is deactivated during treatment in normal operation. Electrically isolated by optocoupler. Port: DSUB 9-pin Length of a serial line: max, 3 m, shielded |
| | Length of a senar line. max. 5 m, shielded |
| Service / diagnostics port | Serial port for diagnostics equipment. Only for use by service support. Port: DSUB 15-pin |
| Alarm system port | For connecting an external alerting system, e.g. nurse call (potential- free alarm output, alternating contact maximum 24 V / 24 W). Port: 5-pin diode plug via shielded line, shielding must be grounded at both ends. |
| | Only accessories and cables approved by the manufacturer must be used. |
| | Signal transmissions to external alerting systems are not monitored by the device. Connecting an external alerting system has no influence on the visual and audible alarms on the device itself. |
| | |



Warning

Risk for the patient as a result of ignored alarm signals

The reliability of alarm signal transmissions to external alarm systems cannot be guaranteed, meaning that alarms can fail to be indicated externally.

Stay close enough to the device to be able to notice any alarms it emits at all times.

12.9 Operating programs

| Functional test | Automatic test of the operating and safety systems. The functional test is mandatory after power on (not following a power failure). |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Preparation | Defined by the optical detector in the return line, below the bubble catcher. Preparation is terminated as soon as the optical detector senses blood in the tubing system. |
| Filling the tubing system | The tubing systems are automatically filled and deaerated. Filling is terminated automatically. |
| Rinsing | Rinse volume: 300 to 5000 ml, can be set in the System Parameters menu. UF rinse: 300 to 2000 ml, can be set in the System Parameters menu. |
| Circulation | After rinsing, the extracorporeal circuit can be kept in circulation until the patient is connected. This is also sometimes referred to as "short-circuiting". |
| Patient connection | Connecting the patient |
| Treatment | Treatment starts as soon as the optical detector senses blood in the tubing system. |
| Treatment pause | The Treatment pause function allows the patient to be disconnected from the device for a short time during treatment. |
| | Treatment pause without blood reinfusion for short periods |
| | Treatment pause with blood reinfusion |
| End of treatment / Blood reinfusion | Blood reinfusion continues until the optical detector no longer detects blood, and can be extended for short periods afterwards. |
| System Parameters | After the functional test has been completed and a treatment has been |

12.10 Balancing/dialysate circuit and safety systems

| Blood leak/haemolysis | Optical absorption method (red/green ratio). |
|-----------------------|--|
| detector (yellow) | Response threshold of ≤ 0.5 ml blood loss per minute, independent of |
| | the flow rate (including measurement tolerance). |
| | The response threshold is set to allow a maximum filtrate flow and |
| | haematocrit value of 32 %. This corresponds to a maximum possible |
| | blood loss of 0.5 ml per minute. |
| | Basic measuring accuracy ±0.1 ml/min. |

| Flow rates | Depending on the treatment option: | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| | Blood flow* | 0 / 10 to 500 ml/min ±10 % | |
| | Substituate flow* | 0 / 10 to 80 ml/min | |
| | Dialysate flow* | 0 / 10 to 80 ml/min | |
| | Citrate flow* | 0 / 10 to 600 ml/h | |
| | Calcium flow* | 0 / 1 to 100 ml/h | |
| | Ultrafiltration rate (UF rate) | 0 / 10 to 180 ml/min | |
| | Filtrate flow | 0 / 10 to 180 ml/min | |
| | Net UF rate | 0 / 10 to 990 ml/h | |
| | Pump type: tube pumps with spring-loaded rollers, fully-occluding. | | |
| | The delivery accuracy of the pumps is \pm 10 %, unless regulated by the scales. If regulated (for treatment procedures with scale balancing), the individual delivery accuracy of each pump depends on the accuracy of the associated scale. In this case, the total delivery accuracy corresponds to the specified balancing accuracy. | | |
| Ultrafiltration* / net fluid removal | The overall ultrafiltration or UF rate set substituate flow, the net UF rate The net fluid removal of the patient rate: 0 to 990 ml/h (in increments of The ratio of the UF rate to the effer monitored during treatment to ensi- not exceeded. If a discrepancy occ- haemoconcentration), a warning w 5 seconds. | e is automatically determined by the te, and the anticoagulation flow. t can be selected through the net UF of 10 ml) ctive blood flow (UF/BF ratio) is ure that the maximum limit value is curs (risk of excessive <i>v</i> ill be displayed after approximately | |
| Balancing/dialysate circuit Volume deviation < 1 %, re on the treatment option), i inclination of no more than If standard treatment para conditions, a maximum ba for HDF treatment types. | | the total delivery volume (depending is standing level or with an angle of are used, and under normal operating deviation of 30 ml/h can be expected | |
| | For Ci-Ca treatment types, further deviation is possible, depending on the relevant volumes administered (see page 12-12 for information on the delivery accuracy of the citrate and calcium pumps). | | |
| Maximum balancing error | 500 g during the treatment of an adult | | |
| during treatment | Once this maximum balancing error value is reached, either through the addition of individual, smaller deviations or through a single serious balance monitoring error, balancing is automatically deactivated. | | |
| | In normal operation (scale balancing active and error-free), even a deviation of only a few grams (depending on the flow rate) from the target value will result in a balancing warning. In the event of an error condition (scale defective or minor leaks), greater deviations are possible. | | |

| | Maximum balancing deviation < 100 ml/h Greater deviations are detected within a total maximum volume deficit of 500 g (functional test of scales) Once the maximum balancing error value is reached, balancing is automatically deactivated. |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Balancing error | E = E _{UF} + E _{SUB} + E _{Anticoagulation} (see also under "Balancing/dialysate circuit") |
| | E = balancing error E _{UF} = Ultrafiltration error E _{SUB} = Substitution error E _{Anticoagulation} = Heparin or Ci-Ca anticoagulation error |
| Scale system | Maximum load: 12 kg per scale Weighing range: 0 to 12 kg Resolution: 1 g Maximum linear deviation: $\leq \pm 1$ % or 1 g (the higher value always applies) |
| | |
| temperature* | Adjustable range: off, 35 to 39 °C Resolution: 0.5 °C |
| | At ambient temperatures of ≥20 °C and when using solutions at ambient temperatures, the set temperature is reached in normal operation (active balancing / alarm-free state) with an accuracy of +1.5 °C / -3 °C. For ambient room temperatures < 20 °C, greater downward deviations are possible due to heat losses. Additional, external measures must be undertaken as needed in these cases. |
| | There are two alarm threshold values. As soon as an inflow temperature of 42 °C is exceeded, this starts an override condition during which the alarm is not yet sounded. After 120 ml at this temperature, or if an inflow temperature of 46 °C is reached, the alarm is sounded and the fluid inflow is stopped, This must be confirmed by the operator. An automatic restart is not performed until the temperature has dropped below the temperature alarm threshold. |
| Donor plasma - | Treatment option: TPE |
| temperature* (FFP) | At ambient temperatures of 20 °C to 35 °C, a temperature between 25 °C and 38 °C at the insertion site is achieved when substituate or plasma heaters (active balancing/alarm-free state) are switched on. |
| Ambient temperature sensor | This temperature sensor measures the ambient room temperature. The measured temperature is used for regulating the integrated heaters. External additional heaters are not regulated. Accuracy: ±1 °C |
| Heater microswitch | The microswitch is used for detecting a distended or incorrectly inserted heater bag. |
| | (* = essential features for IEC 60601-1) |

12.11 Extracorporeal blood circuit and safety systems

| Return line pressure measurement | The hydrophobic filter in the return line is determined to be fully wetted when the return pressure sensor (blue) fails to detect any pressure fluctuations over at least 4 consecutive blood pump cycles. Pressure monitoring is deactivated for blood flow rates of less than 50 ml/min. |
|--|--|
| Access pressure | Display range: -300 to +300 mmHg Resolution: 5 mmHg Accuracy: 10 mmHg |
| | No blood detected: Access pressure alarm window size: -300 to +300 mmHg |
| | Blood detected: Access pressure alarm window size: +40 to +200 mmHg |
| | Default value adjustable in User setup, Factory setting: +200 mmHg |
| | If the access pressure drops below the lower limit, the access line clamp will remain open to allow the pressure in the system to disperse. In the event of any further pressure alarm, the clamp will close. |
| Return pressure (safety system against external blood leaks) | Display range: -100 to +500 mmHg Resolution: 5 mmHg Accuracy: 10 mmHg |
| | No blood detected: Return pressure alarm window size: -100 to +500 mmHg |
| | Blood detected: Return pressure alarm window size: +40 to +200 mmHg |
| | Default value adjustable in User setup, Factory setting: +100 mmHg Alarm window position can be set over a range from +10 to +500 mmHg (switchover to between -100 and +500 mmHg possible in the event of an alarm, if extending low return pressure alarm is activated in Service setup) |
| | Factory setting: extending lower return pressure limit is deactivated. |
| Pre-filter pressure | Display range: -50 to +750 mmHg Resolution: 5 mmHg Accuracy: 10 mmHg |
| | No blood detected: Pre-filter pressure alarm window size: -50 to +750 mmHg |
| | Blood detected: Pre-filter pressure alarm window size: +40 to +200 mmHg |
| | Default value adjustable in User setup, Factory setting: +200 mmHg |

| TMP (CRRT) | Display range: -300 to +500 mmHg Lower alarm limit: -60 mmHg Upper alarm limit: +520 mmHg Accuracy: 20 mmHg Displayed only in Pressure / alarm history tab of treatment screen. The TMP is calculated and displayed according to the following formula: |
|------------|--|
| | $TMP = ((P_{ven} + P_{pre}F) / 2) - P_{fil} + Offset$ |
| | TMP = transmembrane pressure P_{ven} = return pressure $P_{pre}F$ = pre-filter pressure P_{fil} = filtrate pressure Offset = 20 mmHg (correction value to compensate for hydrostatic pressure differences) |
| TMP (TPE) | Display range: -60 to +270 mmHg Pressure alarm windows Lower alarm limit: -60 mmHg Upper alarm limit: +50 mmHg to maximum upper alarm limit Maximum upper alarm limit can be defined in User setup between +50 and +100 mmHg |
| | Accuracy: 20 mmHg The TMP is calculated and displayed according to the following formula: TMP = $((P_{ven} + P_{pre}F) / 2) - P_{fil} + Offset$ TMP = transmembrane pressure P_{ven} = return pressure $P_{pre}F$ = pre-filter pressure P_{fil} = filtrate pressure Offset = 20 mmHg (correction value to compensate for hydrostatic pressure differences) |
| Blood pump | Spring-loaded rollers, fully occluding, pressure-limited to 2 bar for standard line with pump segment 6.4 x 1.8 (when using the prescribed tubing systems). |
| ^ | Warning |
| | Risk for the patient as a result of insufficient detoxification |
| | If the access pressure before the blood pump reaches extreme negative values, the blood flow can be reduced, which will impair the effectiveness of the treatment. |
| | \succ Take suitable steps to avoid an extreme negative access pressure. |
| | Delivery rate: CRRT: 10 to 500 ml/min CRRT with citrate anticoagulation: 10 to 200 ml/min TPE: 10 to 300 ml/min |
| | Resolution: 10 ml/min |

Flow accuracy over Pressure range \geq -300 mmHg \leq 10 % Standard line with pump segment 6.4 x 1.8 mm System accuracy of the delivered blood volume: ±10 % considered over the entire treatment duration and valid in typical treatment situations.

| | Blood pump stop al time-based standst through clotting. Alarm delay when b 1 minute (during tre 3 minutes (while pa Alarm repeat if blood | larm: ill monitoring as a safety s plood pump stops: eatment) atient is being connected o od pump standstill continue | eystem against blood loss or disconnected) es: every 60 s |
|---|---|--|---|
| Fill level detector | Method: Capacitive measure | ement | |
| | Switching point 13 | mm, ±4 mm from upper e | dge |
| Optical detector | Method: infrared tra | ansmission | |
| | Distinguishes between No blood detect Blood detected | een: ed (NaCl solution or air in (blood in tubing) | tubing) |
| Air bubble detector | Method: Ultrasound transmi | ssion measurement throug | gh tubing |
| | Detects: – Air bubbles – Blood foam (air/ – Microbubbles | blood mixture) | |
| | Air alarm in the follo Blood foam Microbubbles Blood flow rate Air bubble: volut Blood flow rate 10 air bubbles with blood foam | owing cases: < 100 ml/min: me ≥ 20 µl ≥ 100 ml/min: vith a bubble volume of < 5 n a bubble volume of ≥ 50 | 50 μl each, or μl, or |
| The above data is based on a worst-case assumption, at a blood rate of 0 to 500 ml/min using the prescribed tubing systems. | | | sumption, at a blood flow ubing systems. |
| | Full sensitivity at the maximum blood flow is achieved with patients weighing upwards of 45 kg. | | |
| | In order to ensure a 45 kg in a worst-ca select a lower maxi table. | a similar sensitivity with pa se scenario (level in bubb mum blood pump rate acc | tients weighing less than le catcher has dropped), cording to the following |
| | General limit val | ue: 0.03 (ml/min) per kg | |
| | Patient weight | Max. infused air for lowest possible hazard | Limited max. blood flow (condition: wetted) |
| | 40 kg | 1.2 ml/min | 458 ml/min |
| | From 45 kg | ≥ 1.35 ml/min | ≥ 500 ml/min |

| Heparin pump | Pump type: syringe pump Delivery rate: 0.5 to 25 ml/h Resolution: 0.1 ml/min Accuracy: ±5 % for delivery rate 1 to 25 ml/h measured over 2 hours with up to 1.2 bar counterpressure. At delivery rates < 1.0 ml/h, the tolerance could exceed the specified ±5 %. Bolus administration: 0.1 to 5 ml in increments of 0.1 ml (preset maximum bolus volume is 5 ml. This parameter can be set to a lower volume in the System Parameters). Bolus rate: 30 ml/min |
|---------------------------|---|
| Audible tone | Sound pressure level settings of the audible alarm: Volume range: 50 to 80 dB ±5 dB Factory setting: ≥ 65 dB High-priority alarm: 60 to 80 dB ±5 dB Medium priority alarm: 60 to 80 dB ±5 dB |
| Ci-Ca drip counter | Measuring range: 0 to 5 drips per second (independently for citrate and calcium) Measuring method: optical |
| | To permit drips to be detected accurately, the fluid level must be within or below the markings. |
| Citrate pump | Pump type: roller pump Delivery accuracy: ±10 % Delivery rate: 10 to 600 ml/h, depending on citrate/blood ratio. |
| | Dose can be set. Concentration of citrate per litre of delivered blood: 2 to 6 mmol/l in 0.1 mmol/l increments Default value: 4.0 mmol/l |
| Calcium pump | Pump type: roller pump Delivery accuracy: ±10 %, at delivery rates < 6 ml/h the deviation can be ±20 % Delivery rate: off, 1 to 100 ml/h, depending on calcium/filtrate ratio. |
| | Dose can be set. Concentration of calcium per litre filtrate: 0 to 3 mmol/l in 0.1 mmol/l increments Default value: 1.7 mmol/l |
| | The Ci-Ca pumps run at a higher delivery rate (400 ml/h) while the Ci-Ca tube segments are being inserted/removed and the tubing system is being filled. |
| Ci-Ca fill level detector | Function: for detecting and differentiating between a full or empty Ci-Ca drip chamber (independently for citrate and calcium). Measuring method: optical |
| | To permit a filled drip chamber to be detected accurately, the fluid level must be within or above the markings. |
| Cassette detector | Differentiates between cassettes with and without a Ci-Ca system using a colour sensor and colour codes on the cassettes. |
| | Cassette without Ci-Ca: blue marking |

Ci-Ca cassette: yellow marking

12.12 Materials used

Plastics and cast resins

| Abbreviation | Material |
|---------------------------|---|
| ABS | PBT GF 20 UV stabilised, 6 mm (UL94 V0) PC GF8 (Romiloy 9035 UO UV cream) |
| Avery | Avery 420 matt, white, label "UL94 V0" |
| Duplobond | Duplobond 360.2 plus, polyethylene paper, pure acrylate, polyester film |
| Eastar | Eastar DN011 |
| EPDM | EPDM Shore 70 A EPDM-XPP Shore 64 A |
| GV | Grivory GV-4H natural Grivory GV-5H natural |
| HY/EPDM medium resistance | Cellular rubber |
| lglidur | lglidur J Iglidur W300 |
| Kapton film | MT50SK polyimide film |
| LD-PE | LD-PE (SK-03) polyethylene |
| Lupolen | Lupolen 1800 H, colourless |
| NBR | N7LM (70 Shore A) |
| PA6.6 | PA6.6, natural PA6.6, black |
| PA6 | PA6 GF15 PA6 GF10/GK20 (Frianyl) PA6 G, black |
| PA66 | GF30 Ultramid A3EG6, black Ultramid A3K |
| PBT | Glass fiber-reinforced PBT composite |
| PEEK | Polyether ether ketone |
| PET | PET (P) natural, cream |
| PETG | Polyethylene terephthalate copolymer, cream |

| Abbreviation | Material |
|--------------------|--|
| POM | Hostaform C 13021 Polyoxymethylene, natural Polyoxymethylene, cream RAL 9001 POM -C GF 25 |
| PP | Hostacom G2UO2 |
| Polyester | Polyester 100 %, Cu+Ni |
| PU | 8052 white (similar to RAL 9001) MG 804 GR, black MG 804 GF, black GM959 white (similar to RAL 9001) PX 515, cream RAL 9001 SG95, transparent |
| PT | PT WN1452 VZ |
| PVC, hard | PVC, hard |
| PVC, soft | PVC, soft 65 +/- Shore A |
| PVC U | PVC U |
| Pocan | Pocan KU2-7125 |
| Santoprene | Santoprene 271-80 R RAL 7038 agate grey Santoprene 271-73, 73 +-5 Shore A RAL 7038 agate grey |
| Elastosil silicone | LR 3003-50 45° Shore A, agate grey RAL 7038 LR 3003-70 Shore, natural, transparent LR 3003-70, agate grey RAL 7038 LR 3003-60 Shore A, cream RAL 9001 GL P60 (MVQ) WEHA-SI 5250 agate grey RAL 7038 |
| Silicone | SIL (F163.900) fiberless insulating rubber bushing Silicone rubber bushing Silicone-coated paper |
| TPE | Alruna W50 RAL 9001 Alruna W60 RAL 9001 |
| Nonwoven fabric | Nonwoven fabric, acrylic copolymer |
| Zytel | Zytel (nylon) |

• Metals, glass, graphite, ceramics

| Abbreviation | Material |
|------------------|---|
| AI | Aluminum Al Cu Mg Pb anodised E6 EV1, colourless Al Mg3 F25 DIN 1784 Al Mg Si 0.5 F22 Al Mg 1 F21 Al Mg 1 F21 coil-anodised E6 EV1 Al Mg 3 DIN EN ISO 9445 Al Mg 4.5 Mn Al Mg Si1 F28, RD EN 755-3 Al Mg Si1 W28 |
| Bimetallic strip | Bimetallic strip |
| Cu | Copper |
| EP GC | Epoxy resin glass cloth EPGC 202 DIN 7735, type 2372.1, thickness 0.5 mm |
| Spring steel | Spring steel blank, DIN471 Form A |
| Float glass | Float glass |
| Brass 58 | CuZn39Pb3 |
| Brass | CuZn39Pb3 F44 Brass DIN 9021 |
| Steel | Steel 8 zp. blue passivated, DIN 985 1.3541 (X47Cr14 DIN EN ISO 683-17) 1.0330 (ST12), sheet-steel DIN EN ISO 10131 1.0330 (ST12ZE), zinc electroplated zinc plated, chromated Steel blue annealed 5 μ, stamped Tempering class 5.8, gunmetal finish, case-hardened to 0.2 – 0.4 mm depth Steel 45H A2-2, DIN 914 Steel 9 S MnPb 28 K Steel 8.8, ISO 7380m zinc-plated Steel 8.8, zinc plated, DIN 7985 |
| Stainless steel | 1.4021 1.4037 (X65Cr13) 1.4122 1.4301 (V2A, X5CrNi18-10) 1.4305 1.4310 (X10CrNi18-8) 1.4401 (V4A) 1.4404 1.4568 (spring wire) A1, A2, A4 DIN 965-TX |
| Tin plate | 1.0375 |

Electrical equipment

| Component | Material |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Thermistor | Silicon |
| | Copper |
| | Silver |
| | PTFE |
| | Epoxy resin |
| Weighing cell platform | Aluminum, silicone rubber, PVC |
| Power switch | Thermoplastic case |
| | Copper |
| | Tin |
| | Bronze contacts |
| | Glass fiber-reinforced thermoplastic |
| Power supply unit | Aluminum |
| | FR-4 (PCB base material) |
| | Copper |
| | Tin |
| | Silicon |
| | Polyester |
| | Polyurethane |
| | Iron cores |
| | Ferrite cores |
| | PVC |
| Noise filter | Iron cores |
| | Ferrite cores |
| | Copper |
| | Tin |
| | PVC |
| | Polyester |
| Plug connectors | Copper + tin |
| | Glass fiber-reinforced thermoplastic |
| Cables | Copper |

| Component | Material |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| | PVC |
| | Teflon |
| Electronics | Electronic circuit boards |
| | LCD screen |
| | Glass fiber-reinforced thermoplastic |
| | Ferrite cores |
| | Copper |
| | Tin |
| | Silicon |
| | Lithium batteries |
| | Lead-acid rechargeable batteries |
| Drives | Ferrite rubber magnet |
| | Polyester / PTZTR (Avery Dennison) |
| | Micares X 1087 GY (Micafil) |
| | Delrin 500 (DuPont) |
| | RNF-100 (Raychem) |
| | Magnesol U-180 (Lacroix + Kress) |
| | PA Ultramid A3HG7nc (BASF) |
| | Glass-reinforced epoxy resin FR-4 |
| | Polyester / PTWTR (Avery Dennison) |
| | Loctite 603 |
| | Hardloc red 903686 (Denka) |
| | Hardloc green 906245 (Denka) |
| | PA66 |
| Motor-gearbox combination | Polyamide, reinforced |
| | Steel |
| | Esters + polyolefin oil, lithium soap |

| Component | Material |
|-----------|--|
| | Brass |
| | Perfluorinated polyether, polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) |
| | Urethane methacrylate, butylcyclohexyl methacrylate, acrylic acid, butylene glycol dimethacrylate, hydroxypropyl methacrylate, acetylphenylhydrazine, octylphenoxy polyethoxy ethanol, cumene hydroperoxide |

Auxiliary materials

| Auxiliary material group | Material |
|----------------------------|---|
| Felt | Wool, carbonised viscose |
| Gear lubricant | Molykote L-1122 |
| Silicone sealant | DOW Corning 794F Aloxy Sealant |
| Silicone rubber | Material 70105070, Wacker Silicones E 41 transparent, 10-g tube, neutral |
| Double-sided adhesive tape | Adhesive: acrylate A 20, backing material: polyurethane foam (open-cell) |
| Adhesive | Araldite 2021, two-component toughened methacrylate adhesive system |
| Adhesive | Araldite 2029, two-component toughened methacrylate adhesive system |
| Adhesive | Araldite 2048, two-component toughened methacrylate adhesive system |
| Adhesive | Loctite 243 (acrylate, dimethacrylate ester) |
| Adhesive | Loctite 401 |
| Adhesive | Loctite 406 (cyanoacrylate, ethyl cyanoacrylate) |
| Adhesive | Loctite 454 (cyanoacrylate, ethyl cyanoacrylate) |
| Adhesive | Cyanolit |
| Adhesive | Hysol 3421 |

| Auxiliary material group | Material |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Adhesive | Polysiloxane |
| Primer | Loctite 770 (polyolefin) |
| Lubricating oil | Paraliq P460: paraffin. Mineral oil, synthetic hydrocarbon oil, colourless – light yellow |

Lacquers

| Auxiliary material group | Material |
|----------------------------|---|
| Wet coating, filler primer | Alexit 484 Alexit 342-67 |
| Wet coating, top coat | Alexit 5300 Alexit 346-18 Freopox PB 10 13 A |
| Print colours, top coat | TP-218 / 65-HD NT TP-218 / 60 TP-218 / C-MIX 2000 |

13 Definitions

13.1 Terms

| | The terms used in this document correspond to the terminology defined in DIN 58352. Below is a selection of terms that may require further explanation. |
|----------------------|--|
| Access pressure | The access pressure is the pressure in the access system, between the patient's vascular access and the blood pump. |
| Access system | The part of the extracorporeal blood circuit from the patient to the inlet of the filter. |
| Alarm function check | The alarm function check is the verification of the proper function of the alarm equipment. |
| Alarm limit | The alarm limit is a measured value which, if reached, will trigger an alarm. |
| Battery | Internal emergency power supply capable of supporting emergency operation for a limited time in the event of power failures. |
| Blood leak detector | The blood leak detector is a device that detects the presence of blood in the filtrate and plasma lines. |
| Blood pump | The blood pump is the device that transports the blood in the extracorporeal circuit. |
| Calcium flow | The calcium flow is the volume of calcium solution added to the patient's blood per time unit. |
| Calcium pump | The calcium pump is used for adding calcium solution to the patient's blood in the extracorporeal circuit. |
| Card slot | The card slot is for inserting the UserCard / ServiceCard. |
| Citrate dose | The citrate dose is the volume of citrate solution added to the patient's blood in relation to the blood flow. The dose is specified in mmol per litre of blood. |
| Citrate flow | The citrate flow is the volume of citrate solution added to the patient's blood per time unit. |
| Citrate pump | The citrate pump is used for adding citrate solution to the patient's blood in the extracorporeal circuit. |
| Convection | Convection describes the transport of solutes by the bulk motion of the solvent (e.g. by advection, as in haemofiltration). |

| Dialysate | Dialysate is the term for the solution that removes water and waste from the blood in haemodialysis. In the dialyser, it flows around the blood in the opposite direction to it, separated only by the semipermeable membrane. |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Diffusion | In haemodialysis, diffusion is the term used to describe the change in concentration of the solutes as they are transported in the solutions. |
| Exchange volume | The exchange volume is the amount of fluid filtered out of the blood and replaced with substituate on a 1:1 basis (flow rate specified as ml/h or ml/min). The effectiveness of the treatment is significantly proportional to the quantity of the exchange volume. |
| | The flow rate is the indicator of the speed at which the exchange is performed. |
| Extracorporeal blood circuit | The extracorporeal blood circuit is the blood circuit outside the body, e.g., in the haemodialysis device. |
| Filter life | The filter life is the parameter that is used to monitor how long blood has been flowing through the tubing system. This is basically the same as the treatment time, but will normally be higher, because, while the treatment time count is suspended when balancing is interrupted, the filter life count continues. |
| Filtrate / filtrate flow | Filtrate or filtrate flow is the sum total of the dialysate, substituate, net UF, heparin, citrate and calcium flow. The filtrate or filtrate flow forms the basis for the internal calculation of the calcium dose by the system. |
| Filtrate bag | The filtrate bag is the collection bag for the filtrate (ultrafiltrate), otherwise known as waste. |
| Filtration | Filtration describes the convective flow of solvents, e.g., water, through a membrane, in following a hydrostatic and/or osmotic pressure gradient. Dissolved particles are also carried along (convective transport) if they are not retained by the membrane. |
| Haemodialysis | Haemodialysis describes the diffusion and exchange process that takes place between the dialysate and the patient's blood in the extracorporeal blood circuit. |
| Haemofiltration | Haemofiltration is the ultrafiltration of plasma water and its solutes to eliminate endogenous and exogenous toxins and water while simultaneously replacing the ultrafiltrate with appropriate amounts of electrolyte solution. |
| Heparin pump (anticoagulant pump) | The heparin pump is used for adding the heparin anticoagulant to the patient's blood in the extracorporeal circuit. |
| Hook-up test | The hook-up test is used for verifying that the pressure measurements via the pressure domes are working properly. It is also a test of the tubing system. |

| Insertion switch | Insertion switches are provided in the pump beds of the citrate and calcium pumps. The system uses the insertion switches to detect whether or not the respective Ci-Ca line pump segments have been correctly inserted. |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Kit service life | This is a parameter that shows how long the tubing system has been in use. The kit service life is measured from the start of filling and generates a repeated alarm if the maximum time in operation and/or the maximum transported blood volume is exceeded. The kit should be replaced without delay in this case. |
| Net UF volume | This is the volume of fluid filtered out of the patient's blood that is not returned, i.e., is used to control the patient's body weight (the net UF rate is specified in ml/h). |
| Post-filter calcium concentration | The post-filter calcium concentration indicates the efficiency of the regional citrate anticoagulation and can be used as a control parameter. |
| Postdilution | Adding substituate downstream of the haemofilter. |
| Predilution | Adding substituate upstream of the haemofilter. |
| Preparation time | The preparation time begins when filling is started and ends when blood is detected while the patient is being connected. A single warning is displayed if the maximum preparation time is exceeded. Preparation can be continued after confirming the message. The preparation time also counts as part of the kit service life. |
| Return pressure | The return pressure is the pressure in the return line (e.g., in the bubble catcher). |
| Return system | The return system is the part of the extracorporeal blood circuit from the filter outlet back to the patient. |
| ServiceCard | Card for use by service engineers |
| Substituate | The substituate is the substitution fluid used in haemofiltration. |
| Systemic calcium concentration | This means the systemic, ionised calcium concentration in the patient. This measured value is used to verify and control calcium substitution. |
| Treatment time | This is the effective treatment duration so far, not including messages and periods during which balancing is switched off. |
| UserCard | Card for use by operators |

13.2 Abbreviations

| AC | Alternating current |
|----|---------------------|
| BF | Blood flow |
| Са | Calcium |

| Ci | Citrate |
|---------------|--|
| CRRT | Continuous renal replacement therapy |
| СVVН | Continuous venovenous haemofiltration |
| CVVHD | Continuous venovenous haemodialysis |
| CVVHDF | Continuous venovenous haemodiafiltration |
| DC | Direct current |
| Fig. | Figure |
| HD | Haemodialysis |
| HF | Haemofiltration |
| IEC | International Electrotechnical Commission |
| LED | Light-emitting diode |
| МА | Maintenance procedures |
| Ρ | Pressure |
| Pre-Post CVVH | High-volume continuous venovenous haemofiltration |
| REACH | Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals |
| SVHC | Substance of Very High Concern |
| ТМР | Transmembrane pressure |
| ТРЕ | Therapeutic plasma exchange |
| TSC | Technical Safety Checks |
| UF | Ultrafiltration |

13.3 Symbols



Follow instructions for use General warning Warning, do not overload (respect the maximum load)







13.4 Symbols on consumables



13.5 Certificates

The current versions of the EC certificates will be provided by your local service support organisation on request.

14 Options

14.1 Chapter without content

To facilitate the use of documents from Fresenius Medical Care, the organisation of the chapters has been standardised in all manuals. There may therefore be chapters within this document without any content.

15 Appendix

15.1 Instructions on the use of "free software"

Content

- A. Haemodialysis system "Free software"
- B. Notice required according to German Medical Devices Act

C. Information and remarks on the free software contained in the haemodialysis system

- I. GNU General Public License, version 2
- II. GNU Lesser General Public License, version 2.1
- III. Mozilla Public License, version 1.1
- IV. Veillard License
- V. Catharon License (Libft2lib)

A. Haemodialysis system – "Free software"

In addition to other software, the haemodialysis system contains what is called "free software", which is subject to license conditions deviating from those of the proprietary software protected for Fresenius Medical Care and their licensors.

Some of the license conditions pertaining to such free software provide that Fresenius Medical Care is authorised to distribute the haemodialysis system only if the accompanying documentation contains special information and notices, supplies license conditions and/or provides the source code of such free software. Fresenius Medical Care meets these requirements by providing the copyright notices, remarks and license texts contained in section C below. Please note that, if such information is printed in two languages, the English version has priority.

However, the rights granted by copyright according to section C. and the license texts contained therein, which relate to such free software, do not include the right to make modifications to the haemodialysis system and subsequently continue use of the system with these modifications. On the contrary, the German Medical Devices Act (Medizinproduktegesetz; MPG) prohibits any further operation of the haemodialysis system once the software contained therein has been modified, because any medical device may only be operated in the form certified. For this reason, section B. contains an appropriate notice. In such a case, Fresenius Medical Care will stop any further technical support for the device involved. In addition, such modifications and/or manipulations may result in the voiding of warranty claims against Fresenius Medical Care or other vendors of the haemodialysis system in the haemodialysis system in a manner other than that required during proper operation of the device will solely be at your own risk.

Please also note that the authorities listed in section C apply only to the "free software" mentioned therein. Any other software contained in the haemodialysis system is protected by copyright for the benefit of Fresenius and their licensors and may be used only as intended for the haemodialysis system.

Both the GNU General Public License (GPL) and the GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL) are supplied with this device. You can also download these license conditions from the internet. For GPL, please refer to: http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/gpl.html For LGPL, please refer to: http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/lesser.html

B. Notice required according to German Medical Devices Act

This medical device has been certified in conjunction with the operating system software Linux version 2.4.18. Any modification to the software contained in this medical device, including the operating system software, may result in the medical device losing its conformity with the regulations of the German Medical Devices Act (Medizinproduktegesetz; MPG) and in losing its right to bear the CE mark. Anyone operating a medical device without a valid CE mark according to the Medical Device Directive 93/42/EEC will be liable to prosecution. According to section 41 MPG, perpetrators may be sentenced to up to one year's imprisonment or may be fined. In addition, anyone modifying the software contained in this medical device, or allowing such a modification, will also be liable under product liability law to compensate injured third parties.

C. Information and remarks on the free software contained in the haemodialysis system

I. GNU General Public License, version 2

1. Copyright notice

The following copyright notice applies to the Linux operating system (Linux version 2.6.33.7), including the driver (DMFE.o) modified therein:

Copyright © Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA (Linux Version 2.4.18)

Copyright © Fresenius Medical Care (driver DMFE.o)

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation, Version 2.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA.

2. License text of the GNU General Public License

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Library General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

a) You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.

b) You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.

c) If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it. Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:

a) Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

b) Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

c) Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

5. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

6. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

8. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

9. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

10. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

NO WARRANTY

11. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

12. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Offer

We should be pleased to provide you by mail with a CD containing a full machine-readable copy of the source text of the Linux kernel version 2.4.18, including the modified driver DMFE.o, for a period of three years starting at the time when this haemodialysis system was put into circulation (i.e., when the system was acquired). Only the usual copying and transfer costs will be charged. If you want us to send this CD to you, please inform us accordingly, by e-mail, telefax or mail, under the address given in the Operating Instructions. Please do not forget to specify the system type and the system number.

II. GNU Lesser General Public License, Version 2.1

1. Copyright notice

The following copyright notice applies to the glibc libraries version 2.2.5:

Copyright © Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation, Version 2.1.
This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Lesser General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA.

2. Advisory

The haemodialysis system contains the glibc libraries version 2.2.5, which are subject to the GNU Lesser General Public License version 2.1.

You are authorised to edit these libraries exclusively for your own use and to apply reverse engineering in order to eliminate any errors in such editing.

License text of the GNU Lesser General Public License

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Version 2.1, February 1999

Copyright (C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc.

51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

[This is the first released version of the Lesser GPL. It also counts as the successor of the GNU Library Public License, version 2, hence the version number 2.1.]

Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users.

This license, the Lesser General Public License, applies to some specially designated software packages – typically libraries – of the Free Software Foundation and other authors who decide to use it. You can use it too, but we suggest you first think carefully about whether this license or the ordinary General Public License is the better strategy to use in any particular case, based on the explanations below.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom of use, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish); that you receive source code or can get it if you want it; that you can change the software and use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you are informed that you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid distributors to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender these rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link other code with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients, so that they can relink them with the library after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with a two-step method: (1) we copyright the library, and (2) we offer you this license, which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library.

To protect each distributor, we want to make it very clear that there is no warranty for the free library. Also, if the library is modified by someone else and passed on, the recipients should know that what they have is not the original version, so that the original author's reputation will not be affected by problems that might be introduced by others.

Finally, software patents pose a constant threat to the existence of any free program. We wish to make sure that a company cannot effectively restrict the users of a free program by obtaining a restrictive license from a patent holder. Therefore, we insist that any patent license obtained for a version of the library must be consistent with the full freedom of use specified in this license.

Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License. This license, the GNU Lesser General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries, and is quite different from the ordinary General Public License. We use this license for certain libraries in order to permit linking those libraries into non-free programs.

When a program is linked with a library, whether statically or using a shared library, the combination of the two is legally speaking a combined work, a derivative of the original library. The ordinary General Public License therefore permits such linking only if the entire combination fits its criteria of freedom. The Lesser General Public License permits more lax criteria for linking other code with the library.

We call this license the "Lesser" General Public License because it does Less to protect the user's freedom than the ordinary General Public License. It also provides other free software developers Less of an advantage over competing non-free programs. These disadvantages are the reason we use the ordinary General Public License for many libraries. However, the Lesser license provides advantages in certain special circumstances.

For example, on rare occasions, there may be a special need to encourage the widest possible use of a certain library, so that it becomes a de-facto standard. To achieve this, non-free programs must be allowed to use the library. A more frequent case is that a free library does the same job as widely used non-free libraries. In this case, there is little to gain by limiting the free library to free software only, so we use the Lesser General Public License.

In other cases, permission to use a particular library in non-free programs enables a greater number of people to use a large body of free software. For example, permission to use the GNU C Library in non-free programs enables many more people to use the whole GNU operating system, as well as its variant, the GNU/Linux operating system.

Although the Lesser General Public License is Less protective of the users' freedom, it does ensure that the user of a program that is linked with the Library has the freedom and the wherewithal to run that program using a modified version of the Library.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, whereas the latter must be combined with the library in order to run.

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License Agreement applies to any software library or other program which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Lesser General Public License (also called "this License"). Each license is addressed as "you".

A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables.

The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".)

"Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

a) The modified work must itself be a software library.

b) You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.

c) You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.

d) If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful.

For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices.

Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy.

This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.

4. You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange.

If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

5. A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License.

However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License. Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables.

When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law. If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.)

Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

6. As an exception to the Sections above, you may also combine or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications.

You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things:

a) Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.)

b) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (1) uses at run time a copy of the library already present on the user's computer system, rather than copying library functions into the executable, and (2) will operate properly with a modified version of the library, if the user installs one, as long as the modified version is interface-compatible with the version that the work was made with.

c) Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution.

d) If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place.

e) Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy.

For an executable, the required form of the "work that uses the Library" must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the materials to be distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things:

a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above.

b) Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

9. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.

10. Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.

11. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

12. If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

13. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

14. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

NO WARRANTY

15. BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

16. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

4. Source code

Offer

We should be pleased to provide you by mail with a CD containing a full machine-readable copy of the source text of the glibc libraries version 2.2.5, for a period of three years starting at the time when this haemodialysis system was put into circulation (i.e., when the system was acquired). Only the usual copying and transfer costs will be charged. If you want us to send this CD to you, please inform us accordingly, by e-mail, telefax or mail, under the address given in the Operating Instructions. Please do not forget to specify the system type and the system number.

III. Mozilla Public License, version 1.1

1. Copyright notice

The following copyright notice applies to the Nano-X server and the Libnano-X software:

The original code is Microwindows. The Initial Developer of the Original Code is Greg Haerr. Portions created by Greg Haerr are Copyright © 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003 Greg Haerr (greg@censoft.com). Portions are contributed by Koninklijke Philips Electronic N.V. These portions are Copyright 2002 Koninklijke Philips Electronic N.V.

2. Advisory

You can download the source code of the Nano-X server and the Libnano-X software from the following website: ftp://microwindows.org/pub/microwindows

IV. Veillard License

1. Copyright notice

The following copyright notice applies to the libXML library:

Copyright © 1998-2002 Daniel Veillard. All Rights Reserved.

2. Advisory

In addition, the following license conditions apply:

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software") to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation of the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

The Software is provided "as is", without warranty of any kind, express or implied, including but not limited to the warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and non-infringement. In no event shall the Daniel Veillard be liable for any claim, damage or other liability, whether in an action of contract, tort or otherwise, arising from, out of or in connection with the Software or the use or other dealings in the software.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of Daniel Veillard shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from him.

V. Catharon License (Libft2lib)

Part of this software is based on programmings made by Catharon Production, Inc.